

**Oracle® Retail Price Management**

User Guide

Release 13.1.6

**E38628-02**

December 2012

Copyright © 2012, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Kris Lange

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

#### **Value-Added Reseller (VAR) Language**

##### **Oracle Retail VAR Applications**

The following restrictions and provisions only apply to the programs referred to in this section and licensed to you. You acknowledge that the programs may contain third party software (VAR applications) licensed to Oracle. Depending upon your product and its version number, the VAR applications may include:

- (i) the software component known as **ACUMATE** developed and licensed by Lucent Technologies Inc. of Murray Hill, New Jersey, to Oracle and imbedded in the Oracle Retail Predictive Application Server - Enterprise Engine, Oracle Retail Category Management, Oracle Retail Item Planning, Oracle Retail Merchandise Financial Planning, Oracle Retail Advanced Inventory Planning, Oracle Retail Demand Forecasting, Oracle Retail Regular Price Optimization, Oracle Retail Size Profile Optimization, Oracle Retail Replenishment Optimization applications.
- (ii) the **MicroStrategy** Components developed and licensed by MicroStrategy Services Corporation (MicroStrategy) of McLean, Virginia to Oracle and imbedded in the MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Data Warehouse and MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Planning & Optimization applications.
- (iii) the **SeeBeyond** component developed and licensed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. (Sun) of Santa Clara, California, to Oracle and imbedded in the Oracle Retail Integration Bus application.
- (iv) the **Wavelink** component developed and licensed by Wavelink Corporation (Wavelink) of Kirkland, Washington, to Oracle and imbedded in Oracle Retail Mobile Store Inventory Management.
- (v) the software component known as **Crystal Enterprise Professional and/or Crystal Reports Professional** licensed by SAP and imbedded in Oracle Retail Store Inventory Management.
- (vi) the software component known as **Access Via™** licensed by Access Via of Seattle, Washington, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Signs and Oracle Retail Labels and Tags.
- (vii) the software component known as **Adobe Flex™** licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated of San Jose, California, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Promotion Planning & Optimization application.

(viii) the software component known as **Style Report**<sup>™</sup> developed and licensed by InetSoft Technology Corp. of Piscataway, New Jersey, to Oracle and imbedded in the Oracle Retail Value Chain Collaboration application.

(ix) the software component known as **DataBeacon**<sup>™</sup> developed and licensed by Cognos Incorporated of Ottawa, Ontario, Canada, to Oracle and imbedded in the Oracle Retail Value Chain Collaboration application.

You acknowledge and confirm that Oracle grants you use of only the object code of the VAR Applications. Oracle will not deliver source code to the VAR Applications to you. Notwithstanding any other term or condition of the agreement and this ordering document, you shall not cause or permit alteration of any VAR Applications. For purposes of this section, "alteration" refers to all alterations, translations, upgrades, enhancements, customizations or modifications of all or any portion of the VAR Applications including all reconfigurations, reassembly or reverse assembly, re-engineering or reverse engineering and recompilations or reverse compilations of the VAR Applications or any derivatives of the VAR Applications. You acknowledge that it shall be a breach of the agreement to utilize the relationship, and/or confidential information of the VAR Applications for purposes of competitive discovery.

The VAR Applications contain trade secrets of Oracle and Oracle's licensors and Customer shall not attempt, cause, or permit the alteration, decompilation, reverse engineering, disassembly or other reduction of the VAR Applications to a human perceivable form. Oracle reserves the right to replace, with functional equivalent software, any of the VAR Applications in future releases of the applicable program.



# Contents

<b>Send Us Your Comments</b> .....	xv
<b>Preface</b> .....	xvii
Audience.....	xvii
Related Documents.....	xvii
Customer Support.....	xvii
Review Patch Documentation.....	xviii
Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network.....	xviii
Conventions.....	xviii
<b>1 Oracle Retail Price Management</b>	
<b>2 Using RPM</b>	
<b>Access the Workspace</b> .....	2-1
Log In to RPM.....	2-1
Exit RPM.....	2-1
View the Workspace.....	2-1
Resize Elements of the Workspace.....	2-3
RPM Window.....	2-3
Toolbar.....	2-3
Workspace.....	2-4
Task Pad.....	2-4
Pane.....	2-5
Look Up Field Level Data.....	2-6
Drop-Down List.....	2-6
List of Values.....	2-7
Multi-Select List of Values.....	2-8
Open the Multi-Select LOV.....	2-9
Select Contiguous (Adjoining) Rows.....	2-9
Select Noncontiguous Rows.....	2-9
Add the Values.....	2-9
Search For and Filter Records.....	2-9
Filter Records in a Table.....	2-10
View Margins (Margin Visibility).....	2-11
View Price Change History.....	2-11
Markup Change Date Dialog Fields.....	2-12
Aggregation.....	2-13
Access RSM.....	2-13
<b>3 System Options</b>	
<b>System Defaults</b> .....	3-1
<b>System Options Definitions</b> .....	3-1

Edit System Options .....	3-5
View System Options .....	3-6
System Defaults .....	3-7
Edit System Defaults .....	3-8
View System Defaults .....	3-9
Aggregation Levels .....	3-9
Maintain Aggregation Level Settings .....	3-9

## 4 Pricing

<b>Price Inquiry</b> .....	4-1
Retrieve an Item Price .....	4-2
Export Price Inquiry Results .....	4-5
Price Guides .....	4-6
Create a Price Guide .....	4-6
Add Price Intervals Individually .....	4-8
Add Multiple Price Intervals .....	4-8
Define Ends in Values .....	4-9
Complete the Price Guide .....	4-9
Copy a Price Guide .....	4-9
Link a Price Guide .....	4-10
Maintain a Price Guide .....	4-11
Candidate Rules .....	4-13
Create a Candidate Rule and Define a Variable for the Rule .....	4-14
Assign a Variable Value .....	4-16
Complete the Candidate Rule .....	4-16
Maintain Rule Variables by Variable or by Department .....	4-16
Delete a Candidate Rule Variable .....	4-17
Update a Candidate Rule Variable .....	4-18
Maintain a Candidate Rule .....	4-18
Delete a Candidate Rule .....	4-20
Zone Structures .....	4-21
Zone Groups .....	4-21
Zones .....	4-21
Primary Zone Groups .....	4-21
Primary Zone Groups - Delete Functionality .....	4-21
Create a Zone Group .....	4-22
Add Zones to a Zone Group .....	4-23
Add Locations to a Zone .....	4-24
Copy an Existing Zone Group .....	4-24
Maintain a Zone Group .....	4-25
Edit Zones .....	4-26
Edit Locations .....	4-27
Create a Primary Zone Group .....	4-28
Maintain a Primary Zone Group .....	4-30
Delete a Primary Zone Group .....	4-30
Codes .....	4-30
Link Codes .....	4-31

Market Basket Codes .....	4-31
Create a Code.....	4-31
Edit a Code.....	4-32
Delete a Code.....	4-33
Create Link Codes.....	4-33
Maintain Link Codes .....	4-35
Search for a Link Code .....	4-35
Maintain or Override a Link Code .....	4-36
Update Link Codes.....	4-37
Delete a Link Code Relationship .....	4-37
Maintain Market Basket Codes .....	4-37
Search for a Market Basket Code.....	4-37
Maintain Market Basket Codes.....	4-38
Update Market Basket Codes.....	4-39
Delete a Market Basket Code Relationship .....	4-40
Calendars.....	4-40
Create a Calendar.....	4-41
Set Up the Calendar.....	4-41
Set Up Review Periods.....	4-42
Maintain a Calendar .....	4-43
Delete a Calendar.....	4-45
Maintain Location Move .....	4-45
Request a Location Move.....	4-45
Create a Location Move Request .....	4-46
Submit a Location Move Request for Approval.....	4-47
Approve a Location Move Request.....	4-47
Reject a Location Move Request .....	4-47
Reset a Location Move Request to Worksheet Status.....	4-47
View Conflicts for a Failed Location Move Request.....	4-48
Delete a Location Move Request .....	4-48
View Location Move Results.....	4-48
Finance Details.....	4-49

## 5 Pricing Strategies

<b>Maintain Pricing Strategies.....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
Area Differential Pricing .....	5-1
Create an Area Differential Pricing Strategy .....	5-2
Define Secondary Areas.....	5-3
Exclude Items From the Area Differential .....	5-4
Complete the Area Differential.....	5-4
Edit an Area Differential Pricing Strategy.....	5-4
Remove a Zone From an Area Differential Strategy .....	5-6
Exclude Items From the Area Differential .....	5-6
Complete the Area Differential.....	5-6
Clearance Pricing.....	5-7
Create a Clearance Pricing Strategy .....	5-7
Define Clearance Strategy Details .....	5-8

Edit a Clearance Pricing Strategy .....	5-8
Edit a Price Guide .....	5-11
Change Calendars.....	5-11
Edit a Markdown .....	5-11
Delete a Markdown .....	5-11
Clearance Defaults Pricing.....	5-11
Create a Clearance Defaults Pricing Strategy .....	5-11
Define Clearance Strategy Details .....	5-12
Add Subsequent Markdowns .....	5-13
Edit a Clearance Defaults Price Strategy .....	5-13
Add Subsequent Markdowns .....	5-14
Edit a Markdown .....	5-15
Delete a Markdown .....	5-15
Competitive Pricing .....	5-15
Create a Competitive Pricing Strategy.....	5-15
Define Competitive Strategy Details.....	5-17
Define Match Strategy Details.....	5-17
Define Price Above or Price Below Strategy Details.....	5-18
Define Price by Code Strategy Details .....	5-18
Define Reference Competitors .....	5-18
Create a Competitive Pricing Strategy Associated with an Area Differential .....	5-19
Define Match Strategy Details.....	5-19
Define Price Above or Price Below Strategy Details.....	5-19
Define Price by Code Strategy Details .....	5-20
Define Reference Competitors .....	5-20
Edit a Competitive Pricing Strategy .....	5-21
Edit a Price Guide .....	5-23
Change Calendars.....	5-23
Edit a Competitor.....	5-23
Edit Reference Competitors.....	5-23
Complete the Competitive Price Strategy .....	5-23
Margin Pricing .....	5-23
Create a Margin Pricing Strategy.....	5-23
Define Margin Strategy Details.....	5-25
Edit a Margin Pricing Strategy .....	5-26
Edit a Price Guide .....	5-27
Change Calendars.....	5-28
Edit Margin Details.....	5-28
Delete Margin Details.....	5-28
Edit Reference Competitors.....	5-28
Complete the Margin Price Strategy .....	5-28
Maintain Margin Pricing .....	5-28
Create a Maintain Margin Pricing Strategy .....	5-28
Define Maintain Margin Strategy Details.....	5-30
Define Market Basket Margin .....	5-30
Define Current Margin.....	5-31
Define Reference Competitors .....	5-31

Edit a Maintain Margin Pricing Strategy .....	5-31
Edit a Price Guide .....	5-34
Change Calendars.....	5-34
Edit Maintain Margin Details.....	5-34
Edit Market Basket Margin.....	5-34
Edit Current Margin .....	5-35
Edit Reference Competitors.....	5-35
Complete the Margin Price Strategy .....	5-35
Delete a Pricing Strategy .....	5-35

## 6 Worksheets

<b>Worksheet Detail</b> .....	6-1
<b>Worksheet Columns</b> .....	6-1
Change the Value in a Cell.....	6-9
Change the Values of Multiple Cells.....	6-9
Maintain Columns .....	6-10
Hide and Position Columns .....	6-10
Sort the Worksheet.....	6-11
Adjust the Size of the Worksheet Content .....	6-12
Adjust Column Sizes .....	6-12
Set Non-Scrolling Columns .....	6-13
Maintain Views.....	6-13
Add a View .....	6-14
Delete a View .....	6-14
Select a View .....	6-14
Apply Filters .....	6-14
Apply an Ad-Hoc Filter .....	6-14
Clear an Ad-Hoc Filter .....	6-14
Clear All Filters .....	6-15
Apply an Advanced Filter .....	6-15
Maintain Worksheet Detail Filters.....	6-15
Create a Worksheet Detail Filter.....	6-16
Apply a Worksheet Detail Filter.....	6-16
Delete Worksheet Detail Filter Criteria .....	6-17
Delete a Worksheet Detail Filter .....	6-17
View Conflict Check Results .....	6-17
View Results .....	6-17
Delete Conflict Check Results .....	6-18
Worksheet Status.....	6-18
Maintain a Pricing Worksheet with Filter Disabled .....	6-18
Maintain a Pricing Worksheet with Filter Enabled.....	6-20
Submit a Pricing Worksheet for Approval.....	6-22
Approve a Pricing Worksheet.....	6-23
Reject a Pricing Worksheet .....	6-23
Reset the Status of a Pricing Worksheet .....	6-23
Delete a Pricing Worksheet .....	6-23
Worksheet Detail.....	6-24

Maintain Worksheet Details .....	6-24
Merchandise Extract Item Deletions .....	6-25
Edit Proposed Retail Prices.....	6-27
Take or Reject Proposed Price Changes.....	6-27
View Totals .....	6-28
View Price Change Totals.....	6-30
View Sales Totals .....	6-30
View Competitive Analysis Totals .....	6-30
What-If Analysis.....	6-30
Perform What-if Analysis on a Clearance Pricing Strategy.....	6-32
Perform What-if Analysis on a Competitive Pricing Strategy .....	6-33
Perform What-if Analysis on a Margin Pricing Strategy .....	6-34
Reset What-if Data .....	6-35
Export a Worksheet.....	6-35

## 7 Price Changes

<b>Creating a Price Change .....</b>	<b>7-1</b>
Search for a Price Change .....	7-2
Conflict Checking.....	7-3
Conflict Check Status .....	7-4
Create a Regular Price Change.....	7-5
Set Up Price Change Type .....	7-8
Select Locations .....	7-8
Select Items.....	7-9
Complete the Price Change .....	7-10
Create a Vendor Funded Price Change.....	7-11
Select the Vendor and Deal .....	7-13
Set Up Price Change Type .....	7-14
Select Locations .....	7-14
Enter Funding Information .....	7-15
Select Items.....	7-15
Complete the Price Change .....	7-15
Price Change Exclusion.....	7-16
Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions .....	7-16
Create a Link Code Price Change .....	7-16
Select Link Codes .....	7-18
Set Up Price Change Type .....	7-19
Complete the Price Change .....	7-19
Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions .....	7-19
Change the Status of a Price Change.....	7-20
Maintain a Price Change .....	7-21
Copy a Price Change .....	7-22
Delete a Price Change.....	7-23
Check for Conflicts.....	7-23
Suggest a Date .....	7-23
Create a Location Exception .....	7-23
Create Item Exceptions at the Transaction Level .....	7-24

Create Price Changes for Area Differentials .....	7-24
---	------

## 8 Clearances

<b>Creating Clearances</b> .....	8-1
Search for a Clearance .....	8-2
Conflict Checking.....	8-3
Conflict Check Status .....	8-4
Create a Regular Clearance.....	8-5
Set Up Clearance Type .....	8-7
Select Locations .....	8-7
Select Items .....	8-8
Complete the Clearance .....	8-9
Clearance Exclusion.....	8-10
Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions .....	8-10
Create a Vendor Funded Clearance .....	8-10
Select the Vendor and Deal .....	8-12
Select Locations .....	8-12
Enter Funding Information .....	8-13
Select Items .....	8-13
Complete the Clearance .....	8-13
Change the Status of a Clearance.....	8-13
Maintain a Clearance .....	8-15
Copy a Clearance .....	8-17
Delete a Clearance.....	8-17
Check for Conflicting Clearance.....	8-17
Create a Location Exception.....	8-18
Create Item Exceptions at the Transaction Level .....	8-18
Create Clearance Resets .....	8-18
Clearance Resets Inquiry.....	8-20

## 9 Promotions

<b>Promotion Components</b> .....	9-1
Add Funding Information to a Promotion.....	9-1
<b>Create a Promotion</b> .....	9-2
Conflict Checking.....	9-3
Conflict Check Status .....	9-3
Associate a Deal with a Promotion.....	9-4
Add Components to a Promotion.....	9-5
Select Items .....	9-7
Copy Components to a New Promotion .....	9-10
Create from an Existing Promotion Component.....	9-10
<b>Search for a Promotion</b> .....	9-11
<b>Maintain a Promotion</b> .....	9-12
<b>Create a Simple Component</b> .....	9-13
Add Items and Locations to a Promotion Component.....	9-15
Add Funding to a Simple Component.....	9-16

Create a Threshold Component .....	9-18
Add Items and Locations to a Promotion Component .....	9-19
Add Funding to a Threshold Component .....	9-20
<b>Create a Multi-Buy Component .....</b>	<b>9-21</b>
Create Buy Lists.....	9-23
Create Reward Lists.....	9-24
In the Reward List Area .....	9-24
Under Each Buy List.....	9-25
Add Items to a Multi-Buy Component .....	9-26
Add Locations and Save the Multi-Buy Component.....	9-27
Add Funding to a Multi-Buy Component.....	9-27
Add Billing Information for a Deal to a Funded Component .....	9-29
Examples of Multi-Buy Components .....	9-29
Multi-Buy Meal Deal .....	9-29
Multi-Buy Link Saver .....	9-30
Multi-Buy Cheapest Free .....	9-31
Multi-Buy with Multiple Reward Lists.....	9-32
Multi-Buy with AND or OR Conditions for Buy and Reward Lists .....	9-32
Create a Finance Component .....	9-33
Add Credit Card Details .....	9-34
Add Threshold Details .....	9-35
Promotion Component Detail Maintenance .....	9-36
Item Selection .....	9-36
Item Exclusion .....	9-37
Locations Selection and Exclusion.....	9-38
<b>Create a Finance Component .....</b>	<b>9-38</b>
Add Credit Card Details .....	9-39
Add Threshold Details .....	9-40
Promotion Component Detail Maintenance .....	9-41
Item Selection.....	9-41
Item Exclusion .....	9-42
Locations Selection and Exclusion.....	9-43
<b>Cancel Item/Location .....</b>	<b>9-44</b>
<b>Maintain a Promotion Component .....</b>	<b>9-45</b>
Maintain Component Details .....	9-45
Delete Component Details .....	9-46
Define Item Exceptions and Exclusions .....	9-46
Define Location Exceptions and Exclusions.....	9-47
<b>Promotion Events .....</b>	<b>9-47</b>
Create a Promotion Event .....	9-47
Add a Promotion to an Event.....	9-48
Maintain a Promotion Event .....	9-49
Delete a Promotion Event .....	9-50
Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions .....	9-50
<b>Threshold .....</b>	<b>9-51</b>
Create a Threshold .....	9-51
<b>Vendor Funding Defaults .....</b>	<b>9-52</b>

Create Vendor Funding Defaults.....	9-52
Edit Vendor Funding Defaults.....	9-54
Delete a Vendor Funded Default.....	9-54
<b>Promotion Constraints</b> .....	9-55
Create a Promotion Constraint.....	9-55
Maintain a Promotion Constraint.....	9-56
Search for a Promotion Constraint .....	9-56
Maintain a Promotion Constraint.....	9-56
Delete a Promotion Constraint.....	9-57

## 10 Security Manager

<b>Role Administration</b> .....	10-1
Roles .....	10-1
Workflows and Actions.....	10-1
Create a Role .....	10-2
Edit a Role .....	10-4
Add Users to a Role .....	10-5
Remove Users from a Role.....	10-6
Add Workflow Permissions to a Role.....	10-7
Delete a Workflow and Associated Action from a Role.....	10-9
Add Data Permissions to a Role .....	10-10
Delete a Data Permission from a Role.....	10-13
<b>User Administration</b> .....	10-14
Assign Roles to Users .....	10-14
Add Roles to a User .....	10-15
Remove Roles from a User.....	10-17



---

---

# Send Us Your Comments

Oracle® Retail Price Management User Guide, Release 13.1.6

Oracle welcomes customers' comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document.

Your feedback is important, and helps us to best meet your needs as a user of our products. For example:

- Are the implementation steps correct and complete?
- Did you understand the context of the procedures?
- Did you find any errors in the information?
- Does the structure of the information help you with your tasks?
- Do you need different information or graphics? If so, where, and in what format?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, then please tell us your name, the name of the company who has licensed our products, the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available).

---

---

**Note:** Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the Online Documentation available on the Oracle Technology Network Web site. It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

---

---

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: [retail-doc\\_us@oracle.com](mailto:retail-doc_us@oracle.com)

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.

If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at <http://www.oracle.com>.



---

---

# Preface

The Oracle Retail Price Management User Guide describes the application user interface and how to navigate through it.

## Audience

This document is intended for the users and administrators of Oracle Retail Price Management. This may include merchandisers, buyers, and business analysts.

## Related Documents

For more information, see the following documents in the Oracle Retail Price Management Release 13.1.6 documentation set:

- *Oracle Retail Price Management Release Notes*
- *Oracle Retail Price Management Installation Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Price Management User Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Price Management Online Help*
- *Oracle Retail Price Management Operations Guide*
- *Oracle Retail Merchandising Implementation Guide*

## Customer Support

To contact Oracle Customer Support, access My Oracle Support at the following URL:

<https://support.oracle.com>

When contacting Customer Support, please provide the following:

- Product version and program/module name
- Functional and technical description of the problem (include business impact)
- Detailed step-by-step instructions to re-create
- Exact error message received
- Screen shots of each step you take

## Review Patch Documentation

If you are installing the application for the first time, you install either a base release (for example, 13.1) or a later patch release (for example, 13.1.2). If you are installing a software version other than the base release, be sure to read the documentation for each patch release (since the base release) before you begin installation. Patch documentation can contain critical information related to the base release and code changes that have been made since the base release.

## Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network

In addition to being packaged with each product release (on the base or patch level), all Oracle Retail documentation is available on the following Web site (with the exception of the Data Model which is only available with the release packaged code):

[http://www.oracle.com/technology/documentation/oracle\\_retail.html](http://www.oracle.com/technology/documentation/oracle_retail.html)

Documentation should be available on this Web site within a month after a product release. Note that documentation is always available with the packaged code on the release date.

## Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

<b>Convention</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
monospace	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.

---

---

# Oracle Retail Price Management

Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM) is a strategy-based pricing solution that suggests and assists with pricing decisions. With RPM, you are empowered to automate and streamline pricing strategies across the organization and yield a more predictable and profitable outcome. It provides decision support to all pricing-focused business information at your fingertips to validate and approve pricing and markdown suggestions. This approach results in higher margins, increased sales, and strengthened productivity, all while you remain competitive.

RPM includes Oracle Retail Security Manager (RSM). RSM gives system administrators a single point of security management for RPM.

---

---

**Note:** Access to Security Manager functions requires appropriate security privileges.

---

---



This chapter explains how to access and use the RPM application.

## Access the Workspace

In this section, you will learn how to access the RPM workspace.

### Log In to RPM

How you access Oracle Retail Price Management depends on how the application is set up at your location. Contact your system administrator for instructions. Use the exit procedure when you are done using the application.

### Exit RPM

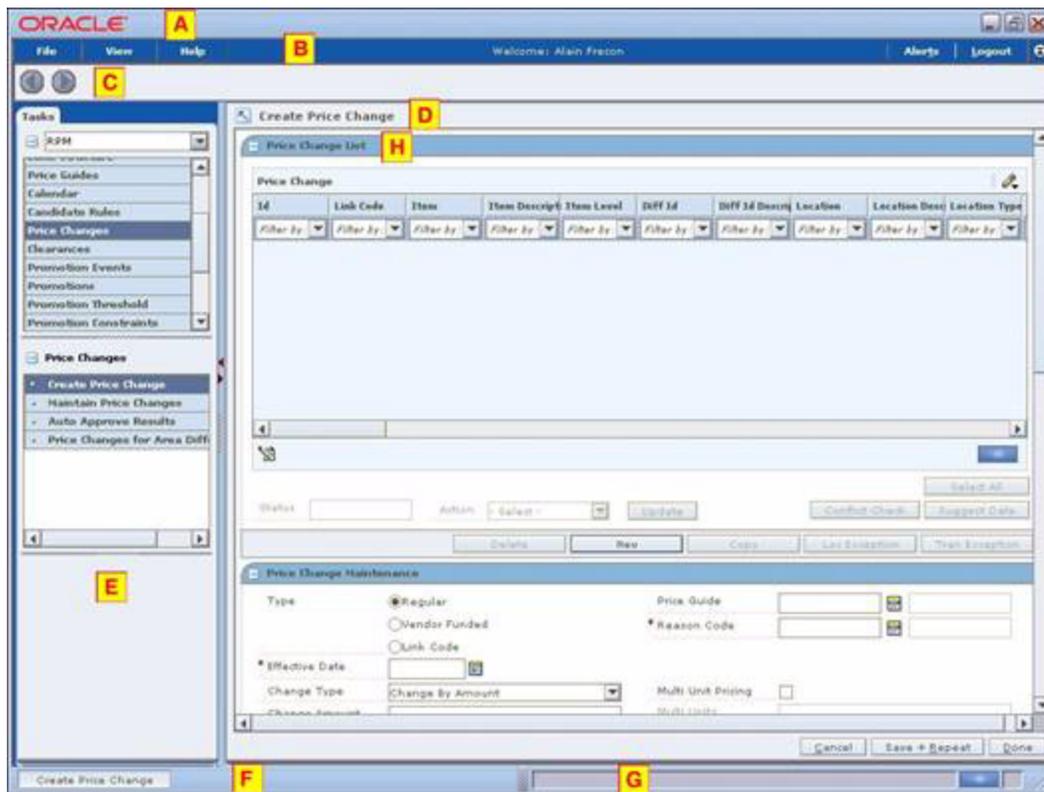
To log out and close RPM:

1. Click **Logout** in the global links area of the header.  
If any tasks are open, you are prompted to confirm your decision to log out.
2. Select **Exit** from the File menu.

### View the Workspace

After logging in to RPM, you have access to the application window. The primary elements in the application window are as follows:

Figure 2–1 RPM Workspace



The workspace is made up of all the elements within the application window. You can manage the application and perform tasks within the workspace. Many of the elements within the workspace can be minimized, maximized, or manually resized. This allows you to customize the workspace to fit your work habits. Any changes you make are remembered by the application. The next time you log in, the elements appear as you last left them.

Table 2–1 Workspace Elements

Element		Purpose
A	Title Bar	Located at the top of the window. The title bar displays the product name. The three buttons at the far right on the title bar allow you to minimize, restore, maximize, and close the application window.
B	Header	Located below the title bar. The header provides access to commands that remain static across all tasks. The menu bar and welcome message appear here.
C	Toolbar	Located below the header. The toolbar contains paging control icons.
D	Workspace	Located next to the task pad and below the toolbar. What appears in the workspace depends on what you select on the task pad. The workspace is where you complete the tasks assigned to you.
E	Task pad	Located on the left side of the application window. From top to bottom, you can access an application, a task group, and then a task. When you select a task, the contents of the task are displayed in the workspace.

**Table 2–1 (Cont.) Workspace Elements**

Element	Purpose
F	Task bar Located at the bottom of the window. Task buttons, located on the task bar allow you to switch between open tasks.
G	Status bar Located at the bottom of the window. The status bar lists the status of a task and gives other information.
H	Pane A sub-section of a window that appears in the work space. Multiple panes may appear in the workspace when a task is selected.
	Task A pane or a group of panes that appear in the workspace, allowing you to work.

## Resize Elements of the Workspace

The benefits of resizing become apparent as you customize the workspace to fit your work habits. You can hide or minimize elements that do not pertain to the current task. You can show or maximize the elements that are of greater importance.

### RPM Window

You can resize the RPM window to increase or decrease the amount of space it occupies on your desktop.

- To manually resize the window, place the cursor over the edge of the window. When the cursor changes to a double arrow, press and hold the left mouse button. Move the cursor until the window is of the desired size. Release the left mouse button.

**Figure 2–2 Minimize and Maximize RPM Window**



- To minimize the window, click the minimize icon (A).
- To maximize the window, click the maximize icon (B).
- To restore the window to its previous size, click the restore icon (C).
- As an alternative method for resizing the window, right click on the RPM button found on the Microsoft Windows task bar. On the context menu that appears, select Restore, Minimize, or Maximize.

### Toolbar

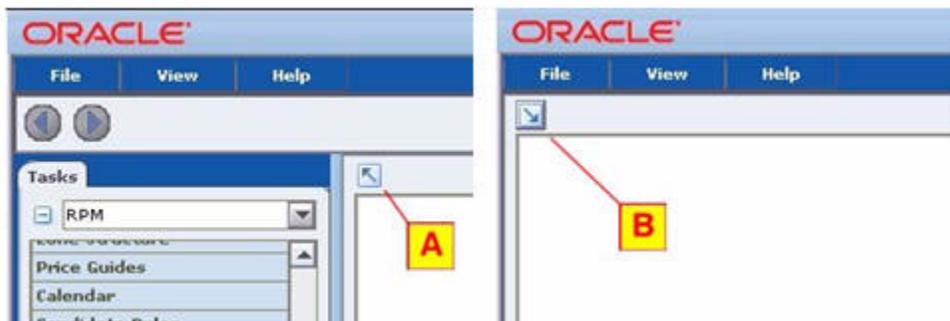
Although the toolbar occupies relatively little space in the window, you can choose to hide it or show it.

**Figure 2–3 RPM Toolbar**

- To collapse the toolbar (A), click the expand/collapse toolbar icon (B). The icon is located on the far right side of the header.
- To expand the toolbar, click again on the same icon.

## Workspace

The workspace is likely to be the most used element in the application. As such, you may want to maximize its size. Should you need to access the task pad, restore the content area to its original size.

**Figure 2–4 Maximize and Restore RPM Workspace**

- To expand the workspace, click the arrow icon (B). The icon is located on the upper left corner of the content area. The content area expands to the width of the window. The task pad and the toolbar disappear.
- To restore the window to its original size, click again on the arrow icon. The task pad and toolbar reappear.

## Task Pad

The task pad provides access to the tasks assigned to you. Once you are working on a task, you may want to reduce the size of the task pad. You may want to increase the size of the task pad in order to see the full names of the task. As you increase or decrease the width of the task pad, the width of the workspace is resized proportionally.

To maximize the task pad, click the right arrow on the separator bar (A). To minimize the task pad, click the left arrow.

Figure 2-5 RPM Task Pad



Note that the width of the task pad can be one of three sizes:

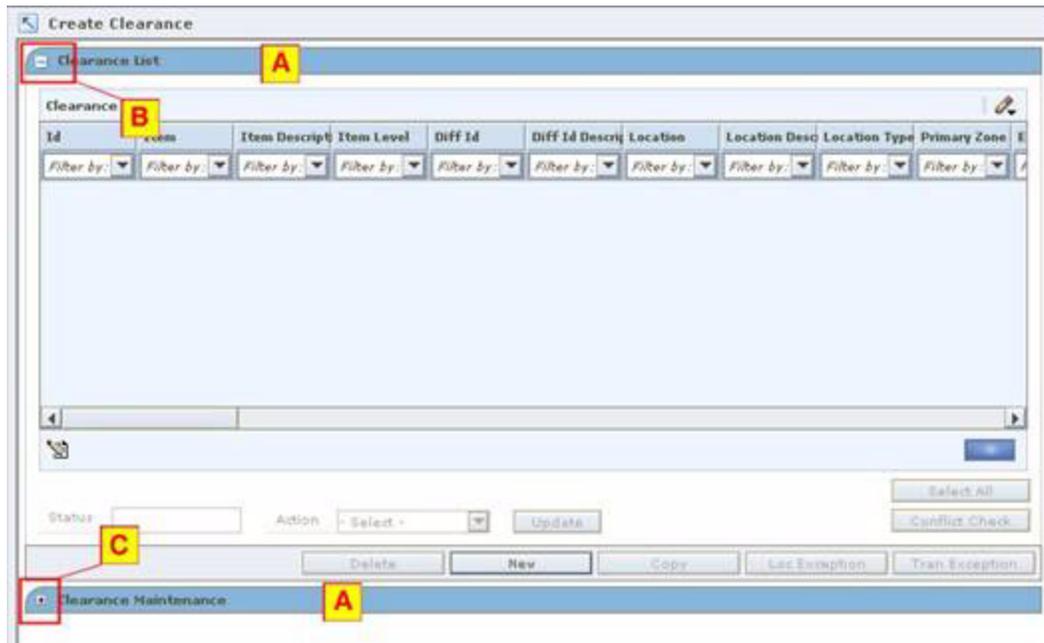
- Maximized to the width of the application window
- Minimized to where it is no longer visible
- Restored to its previous size

To manually resize the width of the task pad or the length of the work areas within the task pad, place the cursor over the desired resizer. When the cursor changes to a left/right (or an up/down) arrow, press and hold the left mouse button. Drag the resizer until the task pad or work area is the desired size. Release the mouse button.

### Pane

One or more panes appear in the workspace when you select a task on the task pad. You can minimize a pane so that it does not distract you from the panes you want to work on. Only the title bar of the pane is displayed after you minimize the pane.

Figure 2–6 RPM Pane



- To collapse a pane (A), click the collapse icon (B).
- To expand a pane, click the expand icon (C).

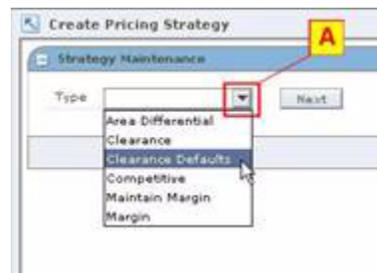
## Look Up Field Level Data

The basic method for entering data in a text field is to type the text in the field. Some fields are restricted, however, as to the type of data that may be entered. The options for entering or selecting data depend on the type of data that may be required or permitted in the field. For example, some fields permit only numeric data, while others permit only alphabetic or alphanumeric data. Some fields require a date to be entered in a specific format. Some fields permit only one value, while others permit multiple values.

Calendars, drop-down lists, lists of values, and transfer boxes provide you with access to preformatted or predefined values. Instructions for using these tools are provided below.

### Drop-Down List

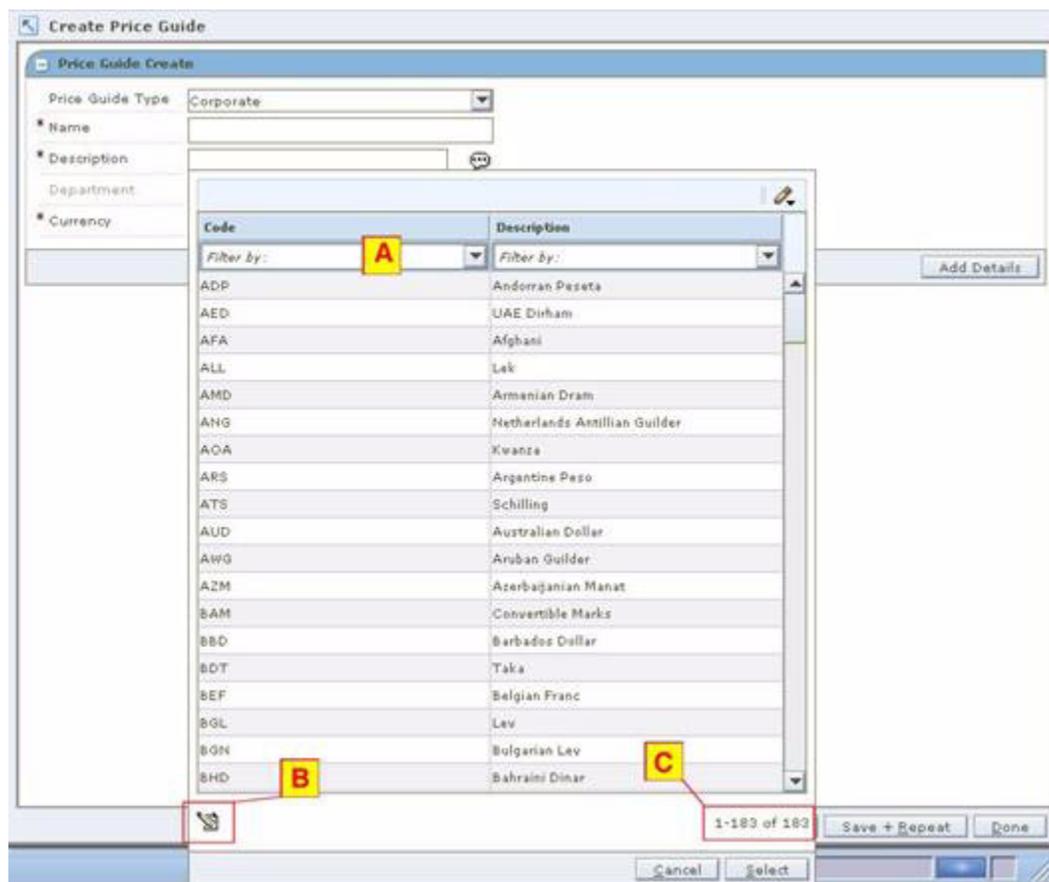
Some fields are restricted to a predefined list of values. You can access a drop-down list from which you can pick the desired value.

**Figure 2-7 Strategy Maintenance Type Drop-Down List**

1. Click on the drop-down arrow (A) next to a field. A list of predefined values appears.
2. Scroll through the list until the desired value appears. Select the value. The field is automatically filled in with the selected value.

### List of Values

When a drop-down list has many values, you can typically access them from the list of values (LOV) button. The following figure is an example list of values for Currency.

**Figure 2-8 List of Values**

1. Click the LOV button next to a text field (A). The list of values opens. The number of values in the list and the total number of values appears at the bottom (C) of the LOV.
  - Click the page icon (B) to open the Paging Configuration window and adjust the page size and page links.

**Figure 2–9** *Paging Configuration Window*

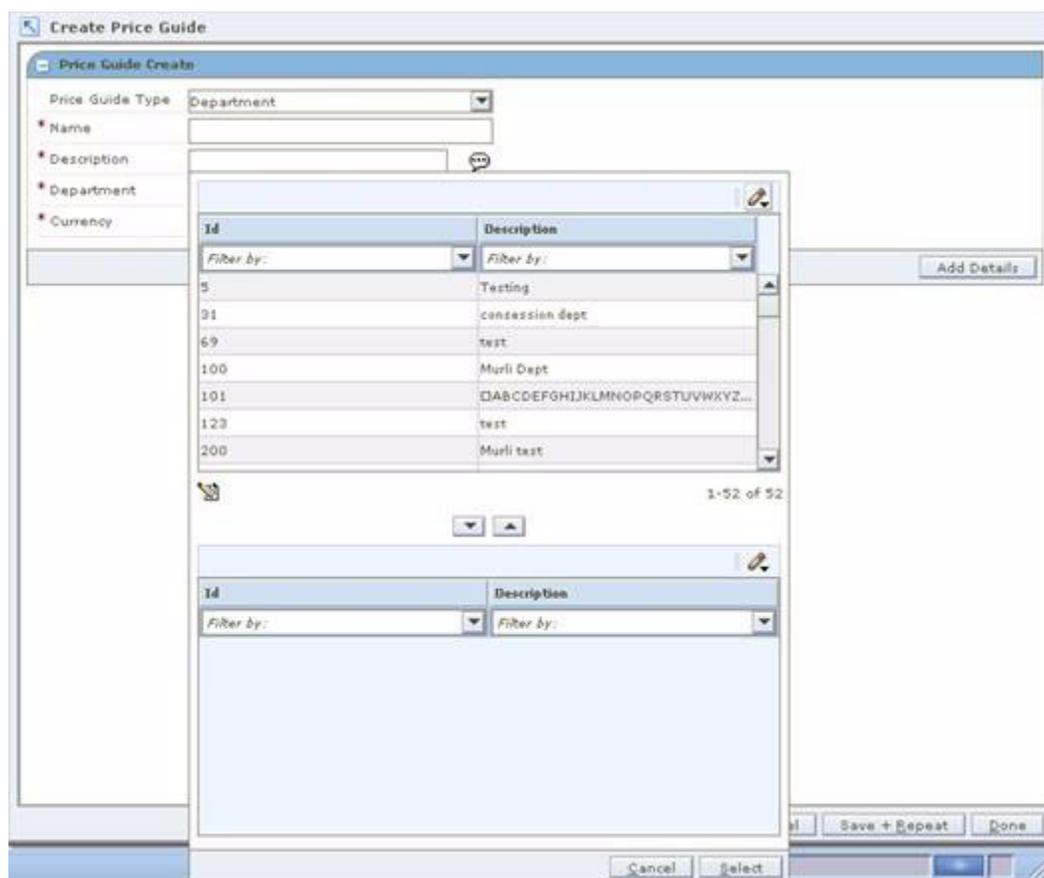


2. To find a value, use one or a combination of the following methods:
  - Scroll through the list.
  - Enter a partial value in the Filter by text box (B) and press Enter. Select the desired value from the results.
  - Select the down arrow next to the Filter by text box (B) and use the Advanced Filter option. Enter conditions in the Advanced Filter and click **OK**.
  - Enter the wildcard (%) and letters before or after it in the Filter by text box (B) to limit values.
3. Select the value and click **Select**. The field is automatically filled in with the selected value.

### Multi-Select List of Values

Some lists of values allow you to select more than one value. These lists have a multi-select LOV button. You can select multiple rows by using the Shift and Control keys along with the mouse button, as you can with many other Windows applications. The following figure shows a multi-select list of values for Department.

Figure 2–10 Multi-Select List of Values



**Open the Multi-Select LOV** Click the LOV button next to a text field, or click the down arrow. The list of values opens.

#### Select Contiguous (Adjoining) Rows

1. Select a row.
2. Press Shift and click on another row to select that row and all the rows in between.

#### Select Noncontiguous Rows

1. Select a row.
2. Press and hold down the Ctrl key, and click on other rows to select or deselect them.

#### Add the Values

1. Click the down arrow to add the values to the selected area.
2. Click the up arrow to remove a value from the selected area.

### Search For and Filter Records

You search for records when none are displayed. By entering search criteria, you indicate which records must be displayed for your use. Filtering, on the other hand, allows you to reduce the number of records (or values) displayed. Again, you enter

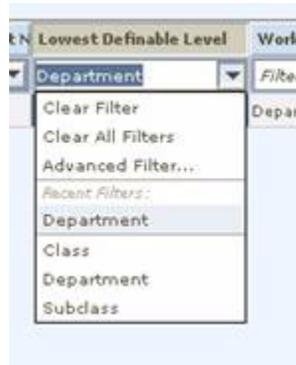
criteria indicating which of the currently displayed records must remain visible. The unwanted records are hidden from view. In either case, you are restricting the number of records (or values) displayed to a more manageable and useful number.

### Filter Records in a Table

Column-level filtering is available in tables that have drop-down lists.

- To use a simple filter, select a filter value from the drop-down list:

**Figure 2–11 Simple Filter**



You can also enter a partial value to limit the choices in the list:

1. Enter a partial string in the active cell. For example: Enter D or d to retrieve all records that begin with D, such as Department.
  2. Press the Enter key. The records that match the value you entered are displayed in the table.
  3. To show all records again, select Clear Filter.
- To use the advanced filter tool:
    1. Click the down arrow in the active cell and select Advanced Filter. The Advanced Filter window opens.

**Figure 2–12 Advanced Filter**



2. Select a relational operator in the first list box. Then select a value in the second list box.
3. If another condition is necessary, select a logical operator (And or Or). Then select the second relational operator and value.

4. Click **OK**. The records that match the conditions are displayed in the table.
  5. To show all records again, click on the down arrow in the active cell and select **Clear Filter**.
- To reuse a filter:
    1. Click the down arrow in the active cell.
    2. Scroll through the list of recent filters; then select the desired filter.
    3. To show all records again, click on the down arrow in the active cell and select **Clear Filter**.

## View Margins (Margin Visibility)

When a price change, clearance, or promotion results in a negative margin, the New Markup % field will be highlighted to alert the user. These alerts are provided when you apply a price change, clearance, or promotion. You can take appropriate action to change pricing, or you can approve the price change, clearance, or promotion with the negative margin.

**Figure 2-13 Example of a Clearance List Highlighting Negative Margins**

New Cost	New Markup	Markup Change
\$50.00	55.5556%	
\$50.00	-33.6264%	03-15-2009
\$50.00	39.2939%	06-15-2009
\$50.00	-22.1222%	08-15-2009

Negative margin alerts are also provided in the Price Inquiry window.

## View Price Change History

Before you approve price changes, clearances, and simple promotions, you can view the price change and cost change history for items or locations in the price event. You can view the following details:

- Up to 10 previous dates with price changes and/or cost changes (the number depends on your system options settings)
- Up to three future dates with price changes and/or cost changes

The Markup Change Date fields in the Price Changes list are displayed as hyperlinks, as shown in the following figure.

**Figure 2–14 Markup Change Date**



When you click on a link, the Markup Change Date dialog opens.

**Figure 2–15 Markup Change Date Dialog**

Parent Id	Item Id	Location Level	Location Id	Cost Change Date	Price Change	Cost	Retail	Markup %	Price Change Id
	100021001	Location	1000000001	08-11-2008		10	20.37	50.9082	
	100021001	Location	1000000001	08-09-2008		10	20.37	50.9082	
	100021001	Location	1000000001	08-07-2008		10	20.37	50.9082	

**Note:** If a price change was created using a link code, or if a promotion was created at a level higher than the parent, the Markup Change Date column is empty.

**Markup Change Date Dialog Fields**

The information displayed in the Markup Change Date dialog is as follows:

**Table 2–2 Markup Change Date Dialog Fields and Description**

Field	Definition
Parent ID/Diff	This column has a value when the price event is created at the Parent ID/Diff level.
Item ID	This column has a value when the price event is created at the transaction item level.
Location Level	This column displays either Zone or Location.
Location ID	This column displays either the Zone ID or the Location ID.
Cost Change Date	This is the effective date of the past or future cost change.
Retail Change Date	This is the effective date of the past or future retail change.
Price Change ID	This column contains the ID of the price change for the retail change, if there was a retail change. This column is blank when only a cost change is effective for the date shown.

**Table 2–2 (Cont.) Markup Change Date Dialog Fields and Description**

Field	Definition
Cost	This is the cost on the effective date of the cost or retail change. (If past cost is not available, this column is blank.)
Retail	This is the regular selling retail on the effective date of the cost or retail change. (If past retail is not available, this column is blank.)
Markup %	This is the markup percent on the effective date of the cost or retail change. (If either the past cost or retail is not available, this column is blank.) The markup percent is calculated using the calculation method specified by your system options.

### Aggregation

If not all item/locations were included in the cost or retail change, the Markup Change Date dialog displays the minimum retail and the maximum cost, so that the lowest margin of all the item/locations on the effective date is calculated and displayed.

---

**Note:** The markup calculation for this column hyperlink display is different from the calculation for markup. If not all item/locations have the same cost or retail in other areas of RPM, the retail is based on the average of the item/locations. The cost is based on either the highest or average, depending on your system options settings.

---

### Example 2–1 Aggregation Calculation

A parent (10) /location (123) level price change is created effective January 1st.

Parent item #10 = Yogurt

A future cost change exists that is effective January 15th for Blueberry and Vanilla flavors, but the Strawberry flavor remains the same price.

Item #11= Blueberry Yogurt (January 15 cost = 1.00, retail = 2.00)

Item #12= Strawberry Yogurt (January 15 cost = .75, retail = 2.00)

Item #13= Vanilla Yogurt (January cost = 1.00, retail =2.00)

In the Markup Change Date dialog, this scenario is displayed like the one shown below (retail and cost accounting methods both shown):

**Figure 2–16 Screenshot of Retail and Cost Accounting Methods**

Markup Change Date (if using Retail method of accounting)									
Parent Diff ID	Item ID	Location Level	Location ID	Cost Change Date	Price Change ID	Cost	Retail	Markup %	
	10	Location	123	1/15/2008		1.00	2.00	150%	
Markup Change Date (If using Cost method of accounting)									
Parent Diff ID	Item ID	Location Level	Location ID	Cost Change Date	Price Change ID	Cost	Retail	Markup %	
	10	Location	123	1/15/2008		1.00	2.00	100%	

### Access RSM

Oracle Retail Security Manager (RSM) is integrated into the RPM application. If you have the necessary security privileges, you can switch between RPM and RSM at any

time during your RPM session. (There is no separate login required for RSM, and you cannot start RSM separately from RPM.)

To switch between RPM and RSM, select from the drop-down list on the Task Pad.

**Figure 2–17 RPM - RSM Task Switch Drop-Down List**



---



---

## System Options

The system options workspace allows you to configure RPM to maximize the system. System options allow you to customize various parameters, defaults, and constants that are used throughout the system. Normally, these elements are set when RPM is installed by the system or database administrator. They tend to remain fixed unless a business practice is changed which necessitates a change in RPM. System options are the values used in your system that define the overall configuration of the system.

### System Defaults

The System Defaults Edit workspace allows you to configure RPM to maximize the system. Select the values that should be initially displayed when a user enters the workspace. This helps the user save time as they do not have to select the appropriate value each time they complete a task. The values entered will appear in other areas of the application.

### System Options Definitions

System options are organized on the following tabs:

- General
- Conflict Checking
- Price Events
- Location Moves

**Table 3–1 System Options Fields and Descriptions**

System Options	Definition
<b>General</b>	
Sales Calculation Method	The method used by the merchandise extract program to populate the Projected Sales column in the worksheet.
Update Item Attributes	When selected, the merchandise extract program updates certain item attributes during each extract that occurs during a worksheet review period.
Recognize WHs as Locations	When selected, indicates that warehouses can be assigned to regular and clearance price zones. They cannot be assigned to promotion price zones.
Open Zone Use	When selected, indicates a zone can be used across different types of pricing, regardless of zone type.

**Table 3–1 (Cont.) System Options Fields and Descriptions**

<b>System Options</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Exact Deal/Funded Promotion Dates	When selected, indicates that the dates of a deal associated with a vendor funded promotion must match the promotion component dates exactly. When selected, only deals with the same begin and end dates as the promotion component being created will appear in the deal.
Default Out of Stock Days	The number of days that should be added to an items clearance effective date in order to calculate the Out of Stock date. The default is applied to generate the out of stock date when the clearance is first created.
# of Days Reject Held	The number of days after the effective date of a rejected price change or clearance that it is purged from the system.
Ends in Digits for Zero Decimal Currencies	The number of digit fields set in system options that are available in the Ends In definition area. This field is used for currencies that do not contain a place after the decimal point. For currencies that contain places after the decimal point, the digit fields that are available.
External Prices Allowed	When selected, RPM accepts pricing events created in other systems.
Zone/Parent Ranging	When selected, RPM performs ranging checks for price changes, promotions, and clearances that are created at a higher level than transaction/location. If the indicator is set to yes, the system will not let you create a price change at the parent or zone level if none of the transaction item/location combinations are ranged. If the indicator is set to no, the system will let you create a price change at the parent or zone level even if none of the transaction item/location combinations are ranged.
Apply Promo Change Type 1st	Indicates which type of promotion change type should be applied first.
Pricing Strategy Default Effective Day	When selected, the user can choose which day of the week price changes will be effective.
Dynamic Area Differentials	When selected, allows the worksheet to dynamically update secondary locations based on changes to the primary location.
Minimize Worksheet Data Filter Screen	When checked, the user is given an optional workflow which includes worksheet data filtering. When unchecked, the worksheet filter screen will not be accessible.
Maximum Worksheet Search Result	Indicates the maximum number of rows that are displayed based on the respective search criteria.
Allow Item List Explosion	When selected, the item list is exploded to the item level.
Hierarchy, Item List, Price Event List, Zone Level # of Item Conflicts Allowed	The percent value of items on the price event that can fail conflict check and continue with price event approval. If more than the defined percent of items fail, the price event will be set to Worksheet status with errors.
<b>Conflict Check</b>	
# Days Event Displayed Before Vdate	The number of days before the VDATE that a pricing event is displayed in the Conflict Review Check window.
# Days Event Displayed After Vdate	The number of days after the VDATE that a pricing event is displayed in the Conflict Review Check window.

**Table 3-1 (Cont.) System Options Fields and Descriptions**

<b>System Options</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Display Conflicts Only	When selected, only conflicts are shown in the Conflict Review window. Selecting this option also disables the option to enter values for Days Before Vdate and Days After Vdate options.  When not selected, values must be supplied for the Days Before Vdate and Days After Vdate options.
Unique UOM is used for all items	When selected, you have to specify which UOM should be used when fixed price events are created and the system will skip the UOM validation.
Unique UOM to be used for all items	Specifies which unique UOM needs to be used. This is a required field if "Unique UOM is used for all items" option is checked.
Do not run Conflict Check for Submit	When checked, the system will skip conflict checking process when the user clicks the Submit button.
Do not run Conflict Check for Multi-Buy Promotion Approval	When checked, the system will skip conflict checking process when the user approves, un-approves, cancels, or updates the end date of a Multi-Buy Promotion.
Do not run Conflict Check for Complex Promotion Approval	When checked, the system will skip conflict checking process when the user approves, un-approves, cancels, or updates the end date of a Multi-Buy Promotion and a Threshold Promotion.
<b>Price Events</b>	
Price Change/Promotion Overlaps	When selected, indicates an item/location can have a price change occur during the middle of an active promotion.
Cost Calculation Method	The way cost is determined for the zone. Choose Highest Location Cost or Average Location Cost.
Clearance/Promotion Overlaps	When selected, indicates an item/location can be on clearance and promotion at the same time.
Multiple Item/Loc Promotions	When selected, an item/location can exist on more than one promotion detail at any given time.
Maximum Number of Overlapping Promotion Component Details	The number of overlapping promotion components allowed for any single item/location. The default value is 4.
Allow Complex Promotions	When selected, all promotion types are available.
Purge Reset Clearance Months	The number of months RPM will retain clearance price events that have reset before purging them.
Default Reset Date	When selected, indicates a reset date should be defaulted when a clearance is created. The reset date is defaulted to one day greater than the out of stock date.
Promotion End Date Required	When selected, a promotion end date is required for the promotion header.
Promotion # Days Rejects Held	The number of days, set in system options, after the end date (or start date for promotions with no end date) of a rejected promotion that it is purged from the system.
Price Change Processing Days	The number of days, set in system options, between the creation date of a price change and the first date it can become effective. It allows the retailer to insure that price changes are created with enough advance timing that stores and other process areas can react.

**Table 3–1 (Cont.) System Options Fields and Descriptions**

<b>System Options</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Promotion History Months	The number of months, set in system options, after a promotion is completed that is purged. This parameter is also used to purge cancelled promotions.
Filter Price Change/Clearance Results	When selected, the user is taken to a filter window that displays the search results for price changes and clearances.
Display Full Promotion Column Detail	When selected, all columns in the table are displayed. If this option is not selected, not all columns are displayed. If the user wants to review the details for the remaining columns, the user can do so by selecting rows and requesting the additional data.  RPM best practice is to have this system option defaulted to unchecked. When unchecked, a button appears in the UI (Add Column Detail). This button should be used to view five or fewer price events at once. It is intended for quick view of adhoc items and is not to be used for reporting.
Display Full Price Change/Clearance Column Detail	When selected, all columns in the table are displayed. If this option is not selected, not all columns are displayed. If the user wants to review the details for the remaining columns, the user can do so by selecting row(s) and requesting the additional data.  RPM best practice is to have this system option defaulted to unchecked. When unchecked, a button appears in the UI (Add Column Detail). This button should be used to view five or fewer price events at once. It is intended for quick view of adhoc items and is not to be used for reporting.
Event ID Required	When selected, a promotion event must be assigned to the promotion.
Display And/Or Condition	When selected, this option allows OR conditions to be used when a multi-buy promotion component contains multiple buy lists or reward lists. If this option is not selected, only AND conditions can be used.
Maximum Number of Buy Lists	This option specifies the maximum number of buy lists allowed for a multi-buy promotion component.
Maximum Number of Reward Lists	This option specifies the maximum number of reward lists allowed for a multi-buy promotion component.
Number of Past Markup Impact Events Displayed	The maximum number of past dates that have a cost or retail change to be displayed in the Markup Change Date column, used to review cost/retail change history. The value of this option can be an integer from 1 to 10 (default 1).
<b>Maximum Search Results</b>	
■ Price Changes	The maximum number of search rows returned for price changes. If the search limit is reached, a message is displayed informing users that they will not see all of their search results.
■ Clearances	The maximum number of search rows returned for clearances. If the search limit is reached, a message is displayed informing users that they will not see all of their search results.
■ Promotions	The maximum number of search rows returned for promotions. If the search limit is reached, a message is displayed informing users that they will not see all of their search results.
■ Price Inquiry	The maximum number of search rows returned for price inquiry. If the search limit is reached, a message is displayed informing users that they will not see all of their search results.
<b>Location Moves</b>	

**Table 3–1 (Cont.) System Options Fields and Descriptions**

<b>System Options</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Location Move Lead Time	The number of days, set in system options, required before a location can be moved between zones in RPM.
Location Move Purge Days	The number of days RPM will retain location moves that have either successfully completed or are the same number of days past the scheduled effective date but have had no action taken on them.
Promotion Overlap	<p>When selected, promotions are allowed to overlap a scheduled location move. If Promotion Overlap is selected, a Promotion Overlap Behavior option must be selected.</p> <p>If Promotion Overlap is not selected (default), promotions cannot overlap a scheduled location move.</p>
Promotion Overlap Behavior	<p>When Promotion Overlap is selected, one of these behavior options must also be selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Do not start existing promotion and inherit new promotion The location does not start the promotion if the zone promotion overlaps the move date. The location inherits a promotion in the new zone that overlaps the move date. The inherited promotion starts on the same day that the zone-level promotion starts, or it starts the day the move is scheduled if the zone-level promotion is already active.</li> <li>■ End existing promotion and inherit new promotion The existing promotion ends at the location on the evening before the move date. The location inherits a promotion in the new zone that overlaps the move date, but the promotion starts on the location move date.</li> <li>■ Extend existing promotion and do not inherit new promotion The location continues to run the promotion from the old zone. The location does not inherit a zone-level promotion for the new zone if the promotion overlaps the move date.</li> </ul>
Inherit New Zones Regular Retail	<p>When selected, the location inherits the retails of the new zone.</p> <p>If not selected (default), the zone keeps the existing retail.</p>
Pricing Strategy Review Period Overlap	<p>When selected, pricing strategies with review periods are allowed to overlap a move date. The validation of a worksheet review period is bypassed, and a location move can be scheduled.</p> <p>When unchecked (default), validation is not bypassed.</p>

## Edit System Options

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select System Options > System Options Edit. The System Options workspace opens.

Figure 3–1 System Options Workspace

The screenshot displays the 'System Options' workspace with the 'General' tab selected. The interface includes a header with tabs for 'General', 'Conflict Check', 'Price Events', and 'Location Moves'. Below the tabs, a list of system options is presented, each with a corresponding input field or checkbox. The options and their current values are as follows:

Option Name	Value / Status
* Sales Calculation Method	Smoothed Average Sales
* Update Item Attributes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
* Recognize WHs as Locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
* Open Zone Use	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Exact Deal / Funded Promotion Dates	<input type="checkbox"/>
* Default Out of Stock Days	120
* # of Days Rejects Held	30
* Ends In Digits For Zero Decimal Currencies	0
External Prices Allowed	<input type="checkbox"/>
Zone/Parent Ranging	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Apply Promo Change Type 1st	Amount Off
Pricing Strategy Default Effective Day	<input type="checkbox"/>
Dynamic Area Differentials	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Minimize Worksheet Data Filter Screen	<input type="checkbox"/>
Maximum Worksheet Search Result	300
Allow Item List Explosion	<input type="checkbox"/>
* Hierarchy, Item List/Price Event List % of Item Conflicts Allowed	

1. Update any enabled fields as necessary.  
See "[System Defaults](#)" for more information.
2. Click **Save** to commit any changes and close the workspace.

## View System Options

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select System Options > System Options View. The System Options View workspace opens.

Figure 3–2 System Options View Workspace

See "System Defaults" for more information.

- Click Close to exit the workspace.

## System Defaults

The following table lists the system defaults.

**Table 3–2 System Defaults Definitions**

System Default	Definition	Options
Item Level	The level of an item in an item group.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Parent Item</li> <li>■ Parent Item/Diff</li> <li>■ Transaction Level Item</li> </ul>
Pricing Strategy	The pricing strategy is the default strategy type displayed for the user when entering the Pricing Strategy workspace.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Area Differential</li> <li>■ Clearance</li> <li>■ Competitive</li> <li>■ Margin</li> <li>■ Maintain Margin</li> </ul>
Diff Type	The category that a diff belongs.	Valid diff types from the Merchandising System.
Type	The type is the default price change type displayed when creating a price change.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Change by Amount</li> <li>■ Change by Percent</li> <li>■ Fixed Price</li> </ul>

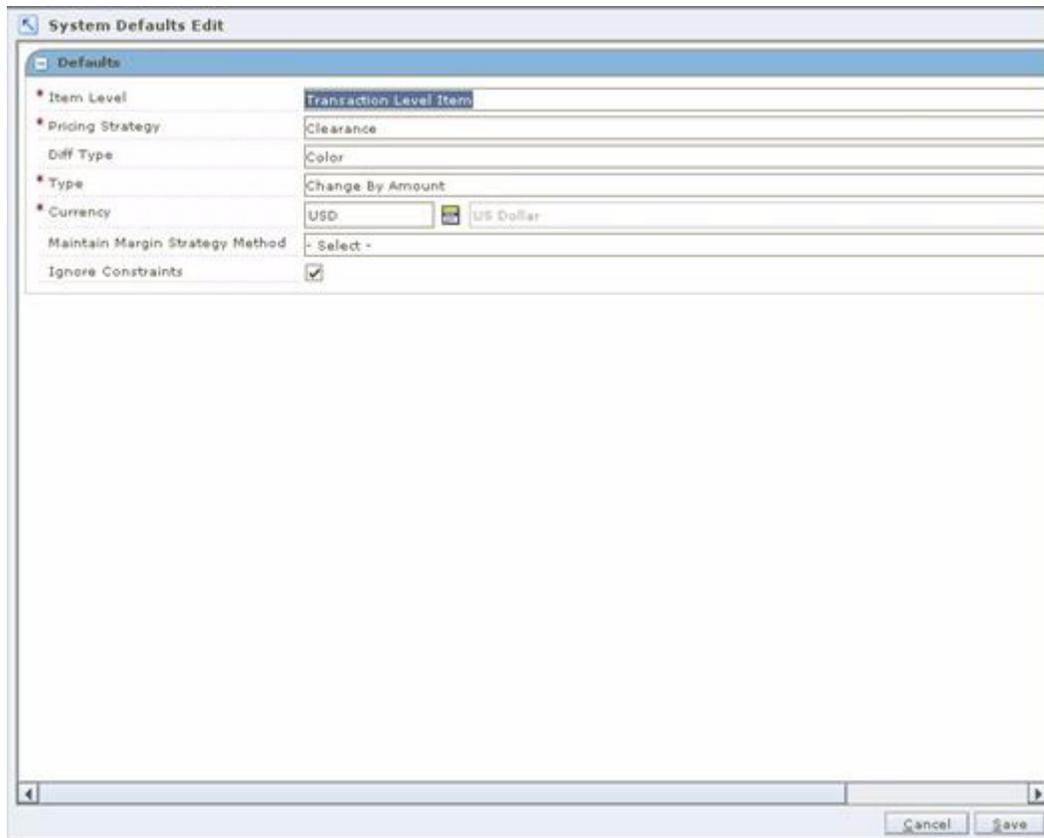
**Table 3–2 (Cont.) System Defaults Definitions**

System Default	Definition	Options
Currency	The primary currency used in RPM.	See LOV button on System Default screen for code and description.
Maintain Margin Strategy Method	Defines the default method used when creating a maintain margin pricing strategy.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Market Basket Margin</li> <li>■ Current Margin</li> </ul>
Ignore Constraints	Defines whether or not promotion constraints are taken into account when conflict checking is performed in the worksheet.	Select/Clear check box

**Edit System Defaults**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select System Options > System Defaults Edit. The System Defaults Edit workspace opens.

**Figure 3–3 System Defaults Edit Workspace**

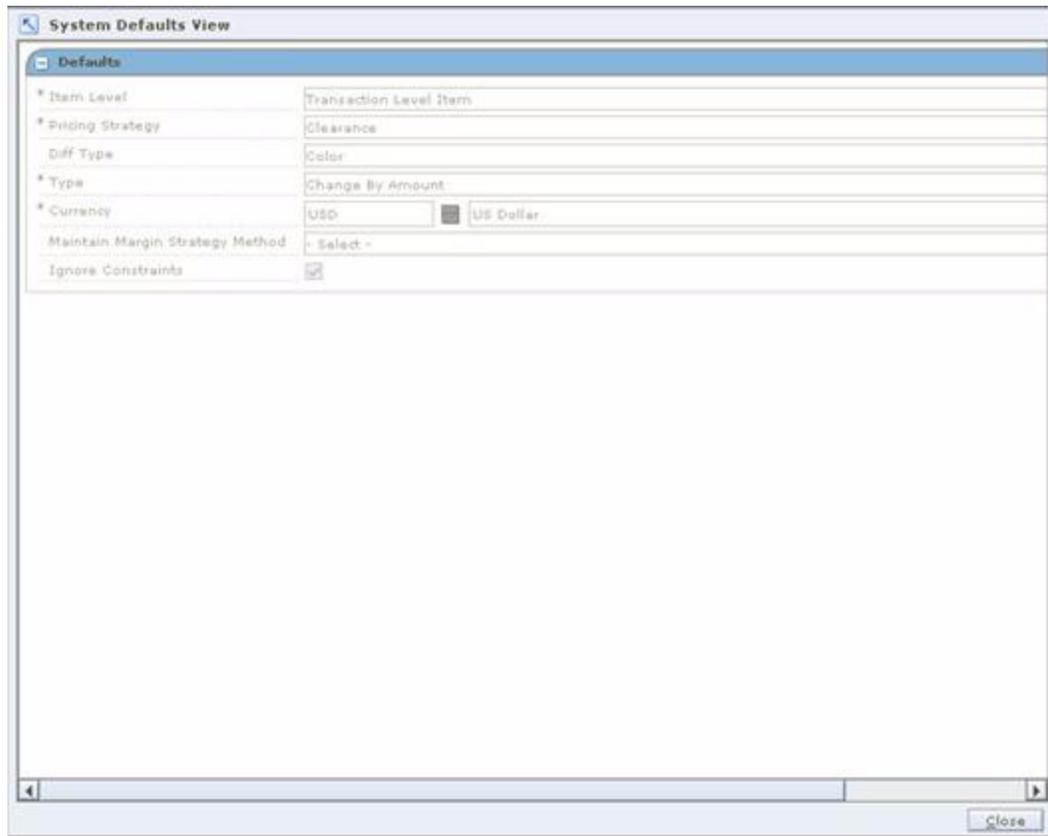


1. Update enabled fields as necessary. See "[System Defaults](#)" for more information.
2. Click **Save** to commit any changes and close the workspace.

## View System Defaults

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select System Options > System Defaults View. The System Defaults View workspace opens.

**Figure 3–4** System Defaults View Workspace



See "[System Defaults](#)" for more information.

Click **Close** to exit the workspace.

## Aggregation Levels

The Aggregation Level Settings workspace allows you to define system parameters that vary for price strategies and price worksheet. When a department is created in the merchandising system, Oracle Retail Price Management assigns the default value for each parameter to the default or default level defined in the system. You may choose to define the aggregation level at a different parameter than the default. When a price strategy exists for a department, parameters are disabled and cannot be changed.

### Maintain Aggregation Level Settings

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Aggregation Level > Maintain Aggregation Levels. The Aggregation Level Settings workspace opens.

Figure 3-5 Aggregation Level Settings Workspace

Id	Department	Lowest Defin	Worksheet Le	Historical Sale	Regular	Clearance	Promotion	Include WH It	Include C
5	Testing	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
31	concession ...	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
69	test	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
100	Muli Dept	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
101	ABCDEFG...	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
123	test	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
200	Muli test	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
222	22 dept	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
229	durables	Class	Department	Week	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
321	test	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
778	fsdfs	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
888	Test	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
980	suman dept	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
998	Cost deprtm...	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
999	New Depart...	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1000	Testing Cos...	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1002	RPM QA DE...	Subclass	Subclass	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1003	RPM QA **...	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1004	**RPM QA ...	Department	Department	Week	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

1. Select the record you want to update.
2. Click in the field that you want to change.
  - **Lowest Definable Level:** Select the lowest level of the merchandise hierarchy for which a price strategy can be defined.
  - **Worksheet Level:** Select the level of the merchandise hierarchy at which worksheets are generated.
  - **Historical Sales:** Select the sales period RPM should represent as historical on the worksheet.
  - **Regular:** Select the check box to indicate that regular sales should be included as part of historical sales in the price worksheet.
  - **Clearance:** Select the check box to indicate that clearance sales should be included as part of historical sales in on the price worksheet.
  - **Promotion:** Select the check box to indicate that promotional sales should be included as part of historical sales in on the price worksheet.
  - **Include WH Inventory:** Select the check box to indicate that warehouse inventory should be included in the calculations for sell through and price change impact in the price worksheet.
  - **Include On Order In Sell Thru:** Select the check box to indicate that inventory ordered is included in the sell through calculations on the price worksheet.

- **Price Change Amount Calc:** Select the method of calculating the price change amount on the price worksheet.
  - **New-Current:** The current price is subtracted from the new price.
  - **Current-New:** The new price is subtracted from the current price.
- **Past Retail Change Highlight Days:** Enter the number of days previous retail changes will cause the Last Price Change column of the pricing worksheet to be highlighted.
- **Past Cost Change Highlight Days:** Enter the number of days previous cost changes will cause the Last Cost Change column on the pricing worksheet.
- **Pending Cost Change Window Days:** Enter the number of days into the future the system should look for pending cost changes.
- **Pending Cost Change Highlight Days:** Enter the number of days into the near future the system should look for pending cost changes. The Pending Cost Change column on the worksheet is highlighted if a cost change falls within the Pending Cost Change Highlight Days.

---

**Note:** Pending Cost Change Highlight Days must be less than or equal to Pending Cost Change Window Days.

---

3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.



## Price Inquiry

The Price Inquiry workspace allows you to look up the price of an item for a selected date and location. The following information appears in the Price Inquiry Results table:

**Table 4–1 Price Inquiry Results**

Column	Description
Item ID/Description	Item ID/Description
Diff ID	The differentiators for the parent item if Parent Item/Diff type is selected.
Location/Description	The selected locations, zones, or zone groups depending on selected criteria.
Primary Zone	Selected if the zone is within the primary zone group.
Date	The selected date. The date the item/location price is valid for.
Regular Retail	The regular price of the item/location for the specified date.
Regular Retail UOM	The unit of measure of the regular item/location.
Regular Multi-Units	The regular multi-units of the item/location.
Regular Multi-Units Retail	The regular multi-unit price of the item/location.
Regular Multi-Units Retail UOM	The unit of measure of the regular item/location multi-unit.
Clearance Retail	The clearance price of the item/location for the specified date.
Clearance Retail UOM	The unit of measure of the clearance item/location.
Promotional Retail	The promotional price of the item/location for the specified date.
Promotional Retail UOM	The unit of measure of the promotional item/location.
Complex Promotion	Selected if the item/location is included on a complex promotion.

Regular retail and multi-unit prices are calculated as follows:

**Table 4–2 Regular Retail and Multi-unit Price Calculation**

<b>Location Hierarchy</b>	<b>Transaction Level Item</b>	<b>Parent Item</b>	<b>Parent Item/Diff</b>
Location	Transaction level price at the location.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent at the location.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent/diff at the location.
Zone	Average of transaction level prices for all locations in the zone.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent at all the locations in the zone.	Average of prices for all transaction level item sunder parent/diff at the locations in the zone.
Primary Zone	Primary zone price.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent in the primary zone.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent/diff in the primary zone.

---

**Note:** Price refers to Regular Retail or Regular Multi-Units Retail.

---

Clearance and promotion prices are calculated as follows:

**Table 4–3 Clearance and Promotion Price Calculation**

<b>Location Hierarchy</b>	<b>Transaction Level Item</b>	<b>Parent Item</b>	<b>Parent Item/Diff</b>
Location	Transaction level price at the location.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent at the location.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent/diff at the location.
Zone	Average of transaction level prices for all locations in the zone.	Average of prices for all transaction level items under parent at all the locations in the zone.	Average of prices for all transaction level item sunder parent/diff at the locations in the zone.

---

**Note:** Price refers to Clearance Retail or Promotional Retail.

---

## Retrieve an Item Price

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Inquiry > Retrieve Item Price. The Price Inquiry workspace opens.

**Figure 4–1 Price Inquiry Workspace**

1. Enter criteria as necessary to restrict the search to the price changes you want to maintain.

**Table 4–4 Search Criteria**

Field	Criteria
Merchandise Level	<p>Select criteria in the following fields to search for prices in a specific merchandise level:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Department</li> <li>■ Class</li> <li>■ Subclass</li> <li>■ Item Type</li> <li>■ Item Level</li> <li>■ Customer Type</li> <li>■ Diff Type</li> <li>■ Item</li> <li>■ Diff</li> </ul>
Customer Type	<p>Select the specific customer type that you want to search on. If no customer type is selected, data for all customer types will be available.</p>

**Table 4–4 (Cont.) Search Criteria**

Field	Criteria
Zone/Location	Select Zone Groups, Zones, and Locations to search for prices from specific zones or locations.
Date	Select the date you need to retrieve a price for.

- Click **Retrieve Price**. Your results appear in the Price Inquiry Results table.

**Figure 4–2 Price Inquiry Results Table**

Item Id	Item Description	Diff Id	Location	Location Desc	Customer Type	Primary Zone	Date	Current Cost	Current Markup	Regular Retail	Regular UOM	Regular Multi	Regular Multi	Regular Multi	Clear
100015082	1 mla item		11	US Core Sto...	<a href="#">Exists</a>	<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.088%	\$122.09*	EA				
100015082	1 mla item		1000	Test ZG1		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.22%	\$122.22	EA				
100015082	1 mla item		1001	test ZG2		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.22%	\$122.22	EA				
100015082	1 mla item		1002	Test ZG3		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.22%	\$122.22	EA				
100031541	Item Item		11	US Core Sto...	<a href="#">Exists</a>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.088%	\$122.09*	EA				
100031541	Item Item		1000	Test ZG1		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.22%	\$122.22	EA				
100031541	Item Item		1001	test ZG2		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.22%	\$122.22	EA				
100031541	Item Item		1002	Test ZG3		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.22%	\$122.22	EA				
100310831	100310831...		11	US Core Sto...		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$1.00	21%	\$1.21	EA				
100311017	100311017...		1000	Test ZG1		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$1.00	22%	\$1.22	EA				
100317021	100317021...		1000	Test ZG1		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$1.00	22%	\$1.22	EA				
100321346	100321346...		11	US Core Sto...		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$3.00	22%	\$3.66	EA				
100321346	100321346...		1000	Test ZG1		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$3.00	22%	\$3.66	EA				
100321485	100321485...		11	US Core Sto...		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$3.00	566.6667%	\$20.00	EA				
100321485	100321485...		1000	Test ZG1		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$3.00	22%	\$3.66	EA				
100329006	100329006...		11	US Core Sto...		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$100.00	22.055%	\$122.06*	EA				
100329014	100329014...		11	US Core Sto...		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$1.00	9,900%	\$100.00	EA				
100329031	100329031...		11	US Core Sto...		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$1.00	22%	\$1.22	EA				
100329073	100329073...		11	US Core Sto...		<input type="checkbox"/>	01/30/2010	\$1.00	22%	\$1.22	EA				

**Note:** If the current margin on an item is negative, the Current Markup % field in the Price Inquiry Results table is highlighted to call your attention to the negative margin.

- In the Customer Type column, click on the **Exists** link. The Customer Type Promotion Retail window opens with the customer type details.

Figure 4–3 Customer Type Promotion Retail

Customer Type	Customer Type	Item Id	Location	Promotional Re	Promotional UO	Complex Promo
2	Test Custmer ...	100031541	11	\$82.00*	EA	<input type="checkbox"/>

- Click **Close** to close the window.

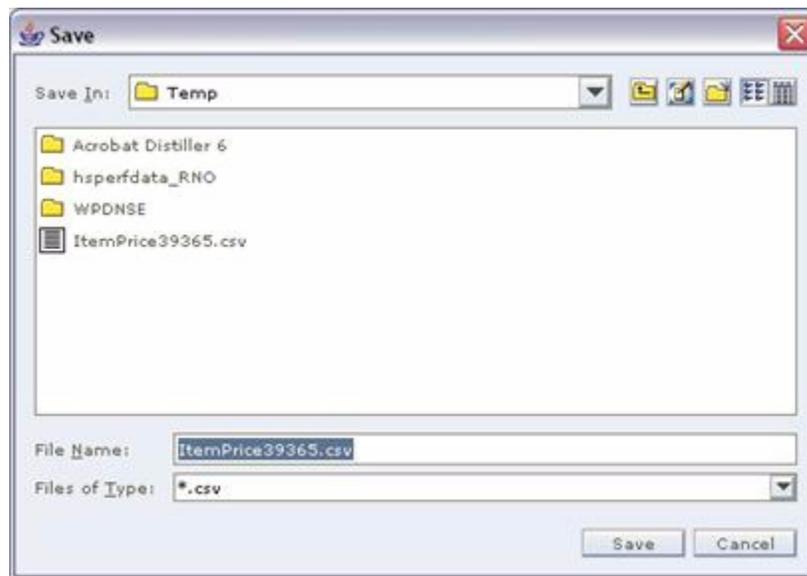
The following screen is an example of negative margin highlighted.

Figure 4–4 Price Inquiry Results with Negative Margin Highlighted

Item ID	Item Description	Diff ID	Location	Location Desc	Primary Zone	Date	Current Cost	Current Markup %	Regular Retail	Regular UOM	Regular Multi	Regular Multi	Regular Multi	Clear
100035315	HP Parent2...		9	NZD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	NZD143.00	300%	NZD572.00	EA				NZD5...
100035024	sp3		3	USD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	\$100.00	300%	\$400.00	EA				\$40...
100035047	sp7		3	USD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008			\$400.00	EA				\$39...
100041061	sp_6R_ssm0		3	USD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008			\$400.00	EA				\$4...
100035047	sp7		9	NZD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	NZD143.00	300%	NZD572.00	EA				NZD5...
100035315	HP Parent2...		3	USD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	\$100.00	300%	\$400.00	EA				\$40...
100041061	sp_6R_ssm0		3	USD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	\$100.00	300%	\$400.00	EA				\$4...
100041002	sp_6R_ssm2		3	USD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	\$505.00	-97.2222%	\$400.00	DOZ				\$39...
100035047	sp7		3	AUD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	AUD127.44	300%	AUD509.84	EA				AUD5...
100035024	sp3		2	CAD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	CAD115.74	300%	CAD462.94	EA				CAD4...
100035024	sp3		9	NZD locations	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	11/29/2008	NZD143.00	300%	NZD572.00	EA				NZD5...

### Export Price Inquiry Results

- Select the row you want to export by clicking the box to the left of the row. Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows.
- Click **Export**. The Save window opens.

**Figure 4–5 Save Window**

3. Select a location to save the file to from the Save In drop-down list.
4. Enter a name for the file in the File Name field.
5. Click **Save**. The file is saved.
6. Open the file in the program of your choice, such as a spreadsheet or word processor.

## Price Guides

A price guide allows you to create a uniform price strategy. You can use price guides to maintain consistent price points. You can determine if the prices in a guide should be rounded in the same manner or if they should all end in the same digits.

Price guides can be set up at the corporate level or at the department level. A corporate-level price guide is created and maintained at the corporate level, but can be referenced by many departments. If any changes are made to a corporate price guide, all departments that are linked to the corporate guide will reflect the updated changes. A department-level price guide is created and maintained at the department level.

After price guides are defined, they can be used when setting up pricing strategies, price changes, clearances, and promotions. Price guides are also used when creating the primary zone group for a merchandise level. When a price guide is attached to a primary zone group definition, it will be applied to the initial prices proposed by RPM during the initial price setting process in RMS (if the proposed price falls within one of the defined intervals on the guide).

### Create a Price Guide

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Guides > Create Price Guide. The Create Price Guide workspace opens.

**Figure 4–6 Create Price Guide Workspace**

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Create Price Guide". It features a form with the following fields and controls:

- Price Guide Type:** A dropdown menu with "Corporate" selected.
- Name:** A text input field.
- Description:** A text input field with a speech bubble icon to its right.
- Department:** A text input field with a plus sign icon to its right.
- Currency:** A dropdown menu with "USD" selected, and a "US Dollar" label next to it.

An "Add Details" button is located at the bottom right of the form area. At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "Cancel", "Save + Repeat", and "Done".

1. In the Price Guide Type field, select the type of price guide you are creating.
2. In the Name field, enter the name of the price guide.
3. In the Description field, enter a description of the price guide.
4. In the Department field, enter the ID of the department, or click the LOV button and select a department.

---

---

**Note:** This field is available only if Department is selected in the Price Guide Type field.

---

---

5. In the Currency field, select the currency for the price guide.
6. Click **Add Details**. The Price Guide Details Create pane opens.

Figure 4-7 Price Guide Details Create Pane

#### Add Price Intervals Individually

1. In the From field, enter the low price of the interval.
2. In the To field, enter the high price of the interval.

---

**Note:** The value in the From field must be lower than the value in the To field.

---

3. In the New Retail field, enter the price that all values in the interval adjust to.
4. Click **Add**. The information is added to the table.

#### Add Multiple Price Intervals

1. In the Start Price field, enter the low price of the block of intervals.
2. In the End Price field, enter the high price of the block of intervals.
3. In the Increment field, enter the amount each interval should increase by.
4. In the New Retail Based On field, select how the new retail price should be determined:
  - **From Price:** The new price will be set to the same value as the value in the From column on the list of intervals.
  - **To Price:** The new price will be set to the same value as the value in the To column on the list of intervals.
  - **Average Price:** The new retail will be set to the average of values in the From and To columns on the list of intervals.
5. Click **Autofill**. The information is added to the table.

---

**Note:** If the End Price is not divisible by the value in the Increment field, RPM will suggest the last valid price in the range. Click **Yes** to accept the price and continue, or click **No** to cancel the process.

---

### Define Ends in Values

1. Select the intervals you want to add ends in value.
2. In the New Retail Ends In field, enter the digits the price ends in.

---

**Note:** The number of fields available are determined at system set up. If your currency uses decimals the number of fields corresponds to the number of decimals used in the currency. If you currency does not use decimals, the number of digits is determined at system set up.

---

3. Click **Apply**. The New Retail field on the selected intervals in the table is updated with the Ends In Digits specified by the user.

### Complete the Price Guide

- Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Copy a Price Guide

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Guides > Copy Price Guide. The Copy Price Guide workspace opens.

**Figure 4–8 Copy Price Guide Workspace**

The screenshot shows the 'Copy Price Guide' workspace. It has three main sections: 'Pricing Guides Origin', 'Pricing Guides Destination', and 'Create Copy Price Guide'. The 'Create Copy Price Guide' section contains a table of guides.

Guide Type	Name	Description	Dept.	Currency	Linked
Corporate	np test 2	np test 2		USD	
Corporate	np test	np test		USD	
Corporate	lj_pg_corp	lj testing corp price gu...		USD	
Corporate	lj_copy_pg	copy corp pg		USD	

At the bottom of the workspace are buttons for 'Cancel', 'Save + Repeat', and 'Done'. A 'Copy' button is also visible near the table.

1. In the Price Guides Origin pane, select the type of the price guide you are copying.

If you select Department Pricing Guides, enter the department ID in the field to the right, or click the LOV button and select a department.

---

**Note:** Price guides that match the criteria entered appear in the Create Copy Price Guide pane.

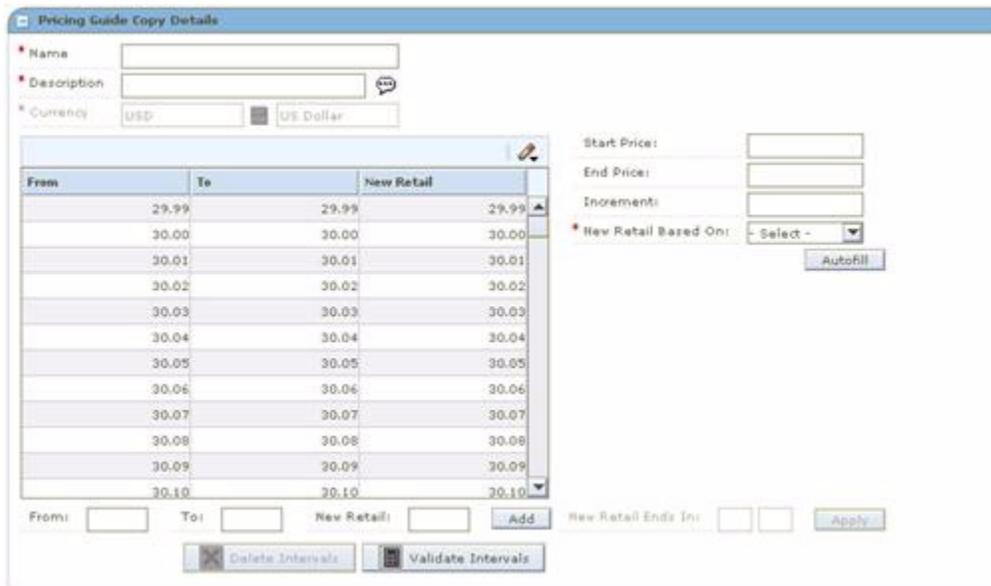
---

- In the Price Guides Destination pane, select the type of the price guide you are creating.

If you select Department Pricing Guides, enter the department ID in the field to the right, or click the LOV button and select a department.

- In the Create Copy Price Guide pane, select the price guide you want to copy.
- Click **Copy**. The Pricing Guide Copy Details pane opens.

**Figure 4–9 Pricing Guide Copy Details Pane**

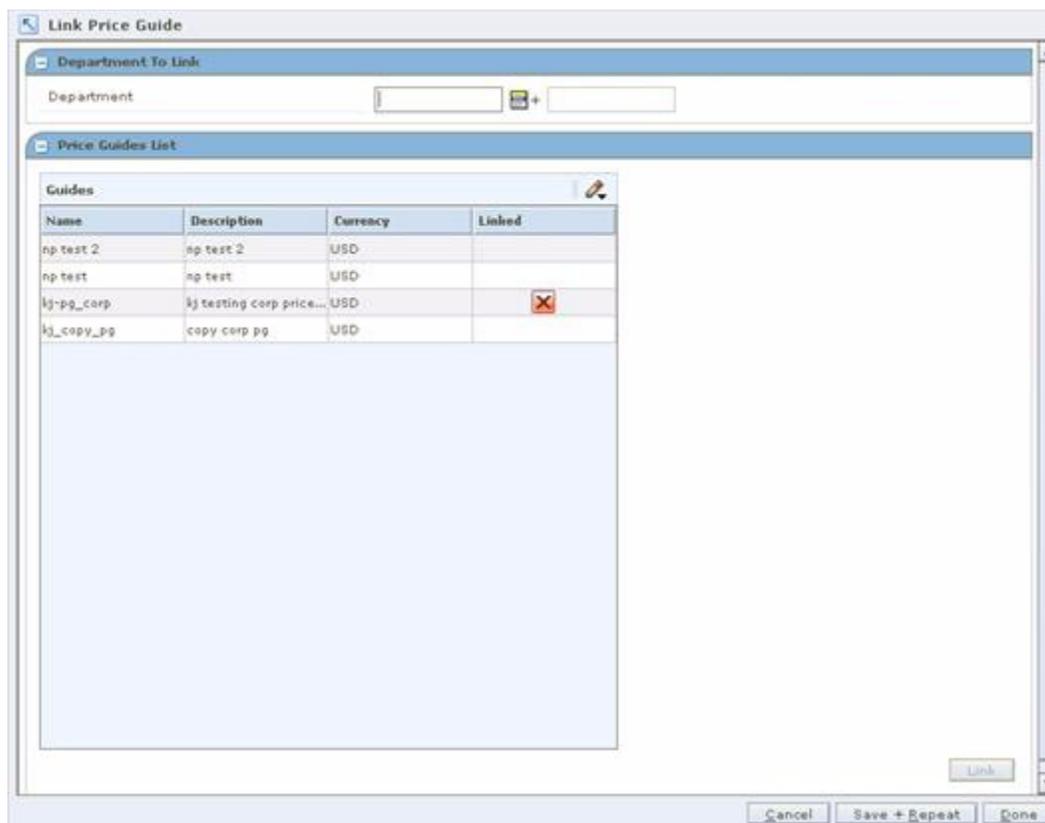


- Maintain the price guide as necessary.
- Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

**Link a Price Guide**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Guides > Link Price Guide. The Link Price Guide workspace opens.

Figure 4–10 Link Price Guide Workspace

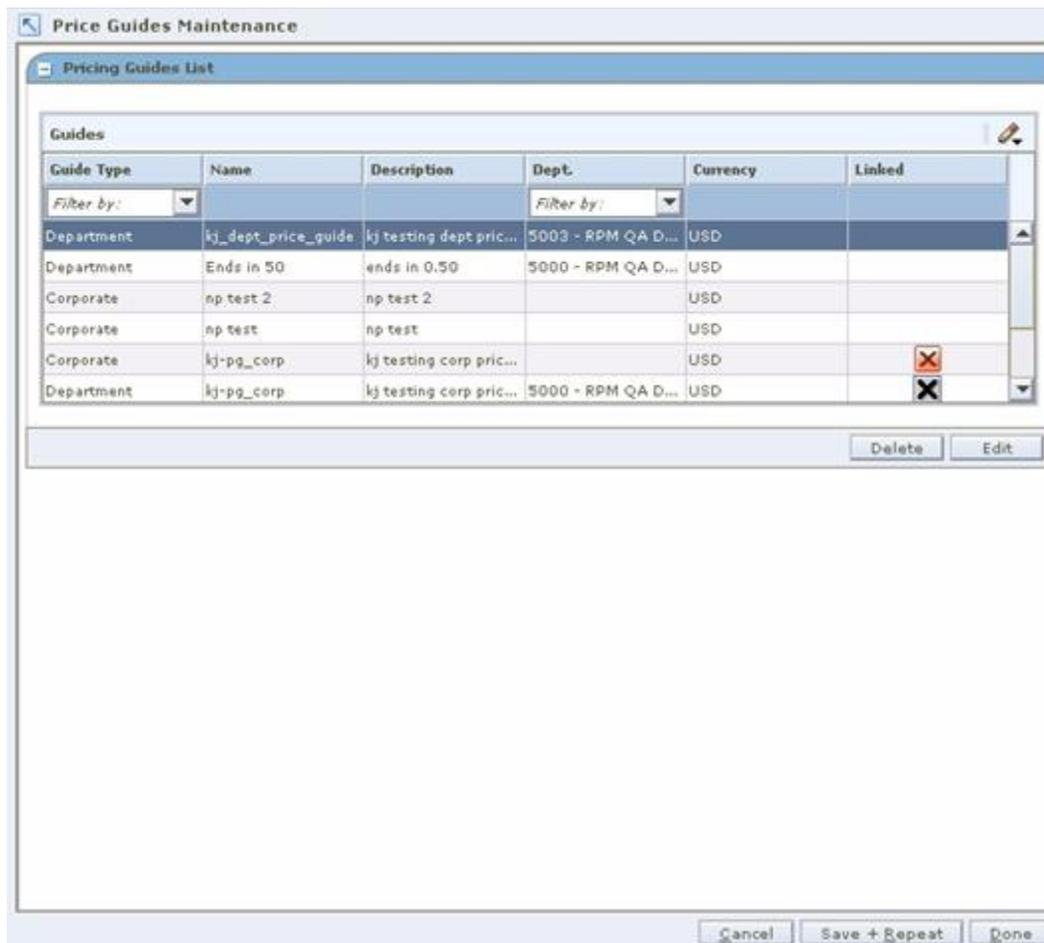


1. In the Department field, enter the ID of the department that you want to link to a corporate price guide.
2. In the Price Guides List pane, select the corporate price guide you want to link to.
3. Click **Link**. A red X appears in the Linked column, indicating that the corporate price guide has been linked.
4. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Maintain a Price Guide

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Guides > Maintain Price Guide. The Price Guides Maintenance workspace opens.

Figure 4–11 Price Guides Maintenance Workspace




---

**Note:** If you are copying a price guide, start from step 3.

---

1. From the Pricing Guides List, select the price guide you want to edit.

---

**Note:** Linked department price guides cannot be edited. They can only be viewed. The details of a linked department price guide are owned at the corporate level, so changes must be made to the corporate price guide.

---

2. Click **Edit**. The Price Guide Maintenance Details pane opens.

Figure 4–12 Price Guide Maintenance Details Pane

Price Guide Maintenance Details

Name: kj\_dept\_price\_guide

Description: kj testing dept price guide

Department: 5003 + RPM QA Dept

Currency: USD US Dollar

From	To	New Retail
0.01	1.00	0.51
1.01	2.00	1.51
2.01	3.00	2.51
3.01	4.00	3.51
4.01	5.00	4.51
5.01	6.00	5.51
6.01	7.00	6.51
7.01	8.00	7.51
8.01	9.00	8.51
9.01	10.00	9.51
10.01	11.00	10.51
11.01	12.00	11.51

Start Price:

End Price:

Increment:

\* New Retail Based On:

Autofill

From:  To:  New Retail:  Add

Delete Intervals Validate Intervals

3. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.
4. Update the intervals as necessary.
  - Add price intervals individually.
  - Add multiple price intervals.
  - Define the ends in price.
5. To delete an interval:
  - a. Select the intervals you want to delete.
  - b. Click **Delete Intervals**. The intervals are removed from the table.
6. To verify if the intervals are sequential:
  - a. Click **Verify Intervals**. If non-sequential intervals exist, an error message appears.
  - b. Click **OK**. The non-sequential values are highlighted in red.
  - c. Correct the intervals as necessary.
    - Add price intervals individually.
    - Delete an interval.
7. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Candidate Rules

The pricing office of your organization determines the optimum strategies for using RPM in your business. After these strategies are decided, you can define the candidate rules and set up the following parameters:

- Candidate rules
- Variables for candidate rules

You use candidate rules to search the database for items that need to be highlighted for pricing review. Candidate rules determine which item/locations will have retail prices proposed in clearance worksheets. In other types of worksheets, they provide a way to identify and track specific items during the worksheet review process.

Candidate rules are defined at the corporate level. You can modify any of the candidate rule parameters. Some rules have variable values. These values are assigned and can be modified at the department level.

---

---

**Note:** Rules that have variables defined are run only against items in Departments where a value has been assigned to the variable. If there is no variable value for a Department, the candidate rule will not run against items from that Department.

---

---

There are two types of candidate rules: Inclusion and Exclusion. Exclusion rules are always run first and identify items that will not be included in the worksheet review. Inclusion rules can contain a variable for Department level differences in the value to be searched against. Items that meet an inclusion candidate rule are flagged on the worksheet. Items that meet an exclusion candidate rule do not appear on the worksheet.

---

---

**Note:** Candidate rules are run against the worksheet when it is first created. They are not run again if the worksheet is updated.

---

---

### **Create a Candidate Rule and Define a Variable for the Rule**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Candidate Rules > Create Candidate Rules. The Create Candidate Rule workspace opens.

Figure 4–13 Create Candidate Rule Workspace

The screenshot shows the 'Create Candidate Rule' workspace. It is divided into three main sections:

- Candidate Rule Maintenance:** Contains fields for Name, Description, Type (radio buttons for Inclusion, Exclusion), and Status (radio buttons for Inactive, Active).
- Condition Definition:** Contains a table with columns for Field, Operator, and Variable Value. The table has four rows, each with a 'Select -' dropdown in the Field column, a '- Select +' dropdown in the Operator column, and a checkbox in the Variable Value column. To the right of the Variable Value column are input fields for Value and a small icon.
- Conditions:** A large empty box for defining the conditions.

At the bottom of the workspace are buttons for 'Remove Criteria', 'Edit Condition', 'Cancel', 'Save + Repeat', and 'Done'.

1. In the Name field, enter the name of the candidate rule.
2. In the Description field, enter a description of the candidate rule. This description can be up to 250 characters.
3. Against Type, select the kind of candidate rule that you are creating.
4. Against Status, select the active status of the rule. Only active rules are run during a review period.
5. In the Field column, select the field to which the candidate rule is applied.
6. In the Operator column, select the relationship that the Field item has to the Value or Variable Name.

---

**Note:** All options may not be available for some field types.

---

Table 4–5 Operator Field Relationship with Variable name

Operator	Relationship
=	Equal to
<	Less than
>	Greater than
<=	Less than or equal to

**Table 4–5 (Cont.) Operator Field Relationship with Variable name**

Operator	Relationship
.>=	Greater than or equal to
<>	Not equal to

7. In the Value field, enter the ID of value or click the LOV button and select a value.

---



---

**Note:** If you enter a Value, the rule runs against all Departments that use this value in the rule. If you enter a Variable, you can assign the value of the Variable by Department.

---



---

#### Assign a Variable Value

1. Select the Variable check box.
2. If the Variable is a new variable, select the New check box.
3. In the Value field, enter the name if it is a new variable or click the LOV button and select an existing variable.

#### Complete the Candidate Rule

1. Enter additional conditions as necessary.
2. Click **Add**. The condition opens in the conditions area.

---



---

**Note:** A single rule can have multiple conditions. If multiple conditions exist for a rule, an item must meet all of the conditions in order for the rule to be met.

---



---

3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

#### Maintain Rule Variables by Variable or by Department

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Candidate Rules > Maintain Rule Variables. The Rule Variable Maintenance workspace opens.

Figure 4–14 Rule Variable Maintenance Workspace

Rule Variable Maintenance

Method: By Variable

Variable: [ ]

Variable Value: [ ]

Department	Description	Variable Value

Remove Value

Cancel Save + Repeat Done

1. In the Method field, select how you want to update the rule variables.
2. In the Variable/Department field, select the value you want to use to update the rule variable.
3. In the Variable Value field, enter the value to be associated with the variable when the rule is run against items in the department.
4. To update the values for multiple departments:
  - a. Multi-select the departments you want to update.
  - b. In the Value field below the Rule Variable Maintenance By Variable table, enter the value to be associated with the variable when the rule is run against items in the department.
  - c. Click **Apply**.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

#### Delete a Candidate Rule Variable

---

**Note:** If the variable is attached to a candidate rule, you must delete the candidate rule before you can delete the variable. To delete the candidate rule, see "[Delete a Candidate Rule](#)".

---

1. In the Department field, enter the Department number or click (LOV) and select from the list of values.

2. Click **View**. A list of the defined variables with their assigned values appears.
3. Select the radio button for the candidate rule variable that you want to remove.
4. Click **Delete**. A message appears, "This variable will be deleted for all Departments. Do you want to continue?"
5. Click **OK**. The variable is removed from the list.

---

---

**Note:** To leave the window without making changes, click **Cancel**.

---

---

#### **Update a Candidate Rule Variable**

---

---

**Note:** Rules that have variables defined are run only against items in Departments where a value has been assigned to the variable. If there is no variable value for a Department, the candidate rule will not run against items from that Department.

---

---

1. In the Department field, enter the Department number, or click the LOV button and select from the list of values.
2. Click **View**. A list of the defined variables with their assigned values appear.

---

---

**Note:** To apply the same variable to more than one Department, select the desired Departments from the list.

---

---

3. In the Value field for the candidate rule variable that you want to edit, enter the appropriate value.
4. Click **Save**. The information is saved.

---

---

**Note:** To exit the window without making changes, click **Cancel**.

---

---

#### **Maintain a Candidate Rule**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Candidate Rules > Maintain Candidate Rules. The Maintain Candidate Rules workspace opens.

Figure 4–15 Maintain Candidate Rules Workspace

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Maintain Candidate Rules" with a sub-tab "Candidate Rule List". Inside, there is a table with the following data:

Name	Text	Variable	Type	Status
T1	Current Margin Percent		Inclusion	Active
Test-Variable	Promotions = [Yes]	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Inclusion	Active
cleardept5002	Department = 5002		Inclusion	Active
Dept5003CL	Store On Hand > 1		Inclusion	Active

Below the table are buttons for "Delete" and "Edit". At the bottom of the window are buttons for "Cancel", "Save + Repeat", and "Done".

1. Select the candidate rule you want to change.
2. Click **Edit**. The Candidate Rule Maintenance workspace opens with information about the selected candidate rule.
3. Change information in any of the fields, as necessary.

---

**Note:** See "[Create a Candidate Rule and Define a Variable for the Rule](#)" for additional information.

---

4. If you want to use the value as a variable:
  - a. Check the box against Use value as variable.
  - b. Enter or click the LOV button to display a list of existing values.
  - c. Select an appropriate value from the list.
5. If you want to edit only the Condition portion of a rule:

---

**Note:** To add a new Condition to a rule without changing any existing Conditions, follow steps c-d below.

---

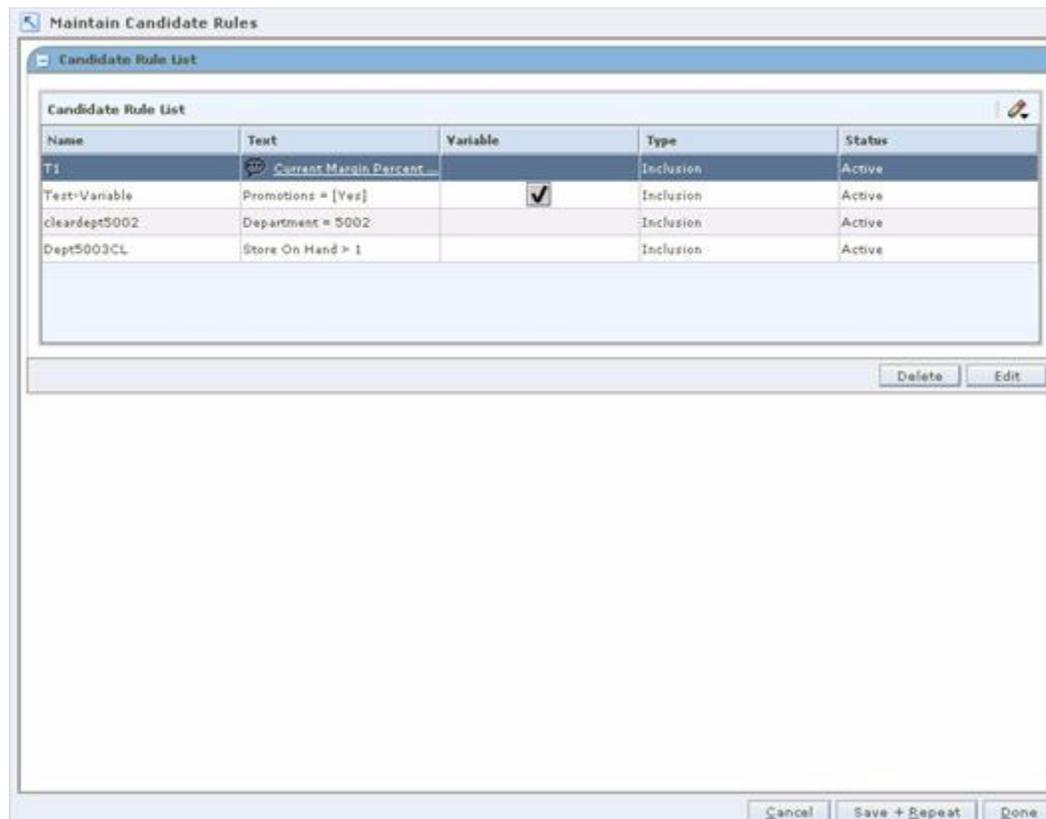
- a. In the Conditions box, select the Condition that you want to change.
- b. Click **Edit**. The components of the selected condition are displayed in the Field, Operator, and Values or Variable Name fields.

- c. Enter the appropriate information in the Field, Operator, and Values or Variable Name fields.
  - d. To include the new or updated Condition without removing the existing Condition, click **Add**.
- Or
- To substitute the existing Condition with the one you just created or edited, click **Replace**.
6. To return to the Candidate Rules window, click **Cancel**. All information that you did not save in the Candidate Rule Maintenance window is lost.
  7. To delete a condition, select the condition in the Conditions box.
  8. Click **Delete**. The condition is removed.
  9. To apply all of the changes that you made in this window, click **Save**. You are returned to the Candidate Rules window.

### Delete a Candidate Rule

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Candidate Rules > Maintain Candidate Rules. The Maintain Candidate Rules workspace opens with all of the current candidate rules listed.

**Figure 4–16** Maintain Candidate Rules Workspace



1. Select the candidate rule you want to delete.

2. Click **Delete**. A message appears, "Are you sure you want to delete the selected rule?"
3. Click **OK** to delete the rule. The rule is removed from the list.

---

---

**Note:** Variables are not deleted if you delete a rule that has a condition with variables and values assigned at the Department level. This feature allows you to use the existing variables and assigned values when you create a new rule. To delete the variables, see ["Delete a Candidate Rule"](#).

---

---

## Zone Structures

Zone structures allow you to group locations that are priced the same. Additionally, you can identify the types of pricing the zone is used for; Regular, Promotional, or Clearance. There are several components that you need to define in order to use zone structures.

### Zone Groups

Zone groups are a collection of zones. You can define multiple zone groups that are suited to your business. After you define the zone group, you can define the zones in the zone group. A location (store or warehouse) can only exist once in a given zone group. Multiple currencies may exist within a zone group.

### Zones

A zone is a group of locations that are priced the same within a zone group. Locations within a zone must have the same currency. Not all locations must be assigned to a zone.

### Primary Zone Groups

The primary zone group is used to determine how items are initially priced in the merchandising system. When you create a primary zone group, you identify the merchandise hierarchy level, the zone group, the markup percent, the markup type, and the price guide. The merchandise hierarchy assigned to a new item in merchandising system will determine the primary zone group definition in RPM used to initially price the item. Based on the information associated with the primary zone group and the cost of the item, as entered in the merchandising system, prices will be proposed. Additionally, price changes that are created against a zone in the primary zone group are stored at the zone level. These price changes can be displayed in the Price Inquiry window.

## Primary Zone Groups - Delete Functionality

Primary zone groups are set up at one of the three levels of the merchandise hierarchy. The system allows you to set up multiple zone retail definitions; you can create one at a department level and another one at a department/class, allowing for a different markup percent for a specific class and/or subclass. The deletion rules will require that you retain at least the highest level of merchandise hierarchy set up for the primary zone group. Below are the rules for deletion.

**Table 4–6 Primary Zone Group Deletion Rules**

Primary Zone Group Create Level	Delete Rules		
	Department	Class	Subclass
Department Only	Not Allowed	N/A	N/A
Department/ Class	Not Allowed	Delete allowed if department level definition exists	N/A
Department/ Class/ Subclass	Not Allowed	Delete allowed if department level definition exists	Delete allowed if department or class level definition exists

A batch process runs ad hoc that will process any merchandise hierarchy changes requested to the primary zone group. Refer to the *Oracle Retail Price Management Operations Guide* for more details.

## Create a Zone Group

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Zone Structure > Create Zone Group. The Create Zone Group workspace opens.

Figure 4-17 Create Zone Group Workspace

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Create Zone Group". It contains several input fields and a table. The fields are: "Zone Group Id" with the value "2621", "Zone Group Name" (empty), "Type" (empty with a "+" button), "Zone Id" (empty), "Zone Name" (empty), and "Currency" with "USD" selected and "US Dollar" as an option. There is a "Take Group" checkbox. A "Next" button is on the right. Below the fields is a table with the following columns: "Zone Id", "Name", "Currency", "Location Count", and "Base". The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the form are buttons for "Save", "Locations", and "Delete". At the very bottom of the window are buttons for "Cancel", "Save + Repeat", and "Done".

1. In the Zone Group ID field, edit the generated Zone Group ID field as necessary.

---

**Note:** The Zone Group ID field appears with the next available number. If you choose to update the field, you must choose a unique ID.

---

2. In the Zone Group Name field, enter a description of the zone group.
3. In the Type field, enter the type of pricing this zone group is used for, or click the LOV button and select a type.
4. Click **Next**. Your zone group is created.

#### Add Zones to a Zone Group

1. In the Zone ID field, edit the generated Zone Group ID field as necessary.

---

**Note:** The Zone ID field appears with the next available number. If you choose to update the field, you must choose a unique ID.

---

2. In the Zone Name field, enter a description for the zone.
3. In the Currency field, enter the currency for the zone, or click the LOV button and select a currency.
4. Click **Apply**. Your zone is added to the table.

5. Add the appropriate number of zones for your zone group.

### Add Locations to a Zone

1. Select a zone.
2. Click **Locations**. The Zone Location Assignment pane opens.

**Figure 4–18 Zone - Location Assignment Pane**

Location	Name	Location Type	New Zone	New Zone Name	Effective Date	Status
999	kavitha_stockledg...	Store				

3. In the Type field, select the type of location you want to add to the zone.
4. In the Value field, enter the ID of the location or location group, or click the LOV button and select a location or location group.
5. Click **Apply** to add the location or location group to the list of locations.
6. Click **Save** to commit any changes.
7. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

---

**Note:** When you add a location to a zone, a location move request is created in Approved status. The location move request will wait for the next scheduling batch, and that batch program will process the addition. If you want to cancel the approved location addition request, you can change the location move request from Approved back to Worksheet status before the scheduling batch is run. See ["Reset a Location Move Request to Worksheet Status"](#) for more information.

---

### Copy an Existing Zone Group

1. In the Zone Group ID field, edit the generated Zone Group ID field as necessary.

---

**Note:** The Zone Group ID field appears with the next available number. If you choose to update the field, you must choose a unique ID.

---

2. In the Zone Group Name field, enter a description for the zone group.
3. In the Type field, enter the pricing strategy that the zone group will use, or click the LOV button and select a type.
4. Select the Like Group check box.
5. Click **Next**. The Like Group pane opens.
6. Enter the ID of the zone group that you want to copy, or click the LOV button and select a group.
7. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

---

**Note:** To edit the newly created Zone Group, see "[Maintain a Zone Group](#)".

---

## Maintain a Zone Group

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Zone Structure > Maintain Zone Group. The Maintain Zone Group workspace opens.

**Figure 4-19** Maintain Zone Group Workspace

The screenshot displays the 'Maintain Zone Group' workspace. At the top, there is a title bar 'Maintain Zone Group' and a sub-header 'Price Zone Group List'. Below this is a table with the following data:

Zone Group Id	Name	Type	Location Count
1	All Locations	Clearance; Regular; Promotion	171
11	US Core Stores	Clearance	1
405	ZG112907	Clearance; Regular; Promotion	157
422	np zone	Clearance; Regular; Promotion	166
562	ZG-AAA	Clearance; Regular; Promotion	100
725	np zone2	Clearance; Regular; Promotion	104
842	N-ZG-1	Clearance; Regular; Promotion	88

Below the table is a 'Filter' section with three rows: 'Location', 'Currency', and 'Type'. Each row has a text input field, a LOV button, and a plus sign. To the right of the filter fields are 'Filter' and 'Clear Filter' buttons. At the bottom right of the workspace are 'Edit' and 'Delete' buttons. At the very bottom of the window are 'Cancel', 'Save + Repeat', and 'Done' buttons.

1. Filter for the records as necessary:
  - a. In the Location, Currency, and Type fields, enter the criteria you want to filter for.

- b. Click the filter button. Zone groups that match your criteria appear in the table below.

---

**Note:** Click the clear filter button to remove the filter criteria. All zone groups appear in the table below.

---

2. To delete a zone group:
  - a. Select a zone group.
  - b. Click **Delete**. The zone group, zones, and locations are removed.

### Edit Zones

1. Select a zone group.
2. Click **Edit**. The Maintain Zone Group pane opens.

**Figure 4–20 Maintain Zone Group (Edit) Pane**

The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Zone Group' edit pane. It includes the following fields and controls:

- Zone Group Id:** 11
- Zone Group Name:** US Core Stores
- Type:** Clearance
- Zone Id:** 2161
- Zone Name:** (empty)
- Currency:** USD
- Apply** button

Zone Id	Name	Currency	Location Count	Base
11	US Core Stores	USD	1	

**Filter**

Location: [ ] [ ] [Filter] [Clear Filter]

Currency: [ ] [ ] [Filter] [Clear Filter]

[Save] [Locations] [Delete]

3. After the zone has been added to the zone group, the currency cannot be changed. The zone with the incorrect currency can be deleted and then re-created with the correct currency.

---

**Note:** If there are no locations in the zone, the currency field is editable. If locations exist in the zone, then the currency field is NOT editable.

---

4. Add zones to the zone group.
5. To delete a zone:
  - a. Select a zone.
  - b. Click **Delete**. The zone is removed from the list of zones.

---

**Note:** You must first delete all locations from the zone before you delete it.

---

### Edit Locations

1. Select a zone.
2. Click **Locations**. The Zone - Location Assignment pane opens.

**Figure 4-21** Zone - Location Assignment Pane

The screenshot shows the 'Zone - Location Assignment' pane. The form fields are as follows:

- Zone Group: US Core Stores
- Zone: US Core Stores
- Zone Currency: US Dollar
- Type: Store
- Value: [Empty] + [Empty]
- Location: [Empty] + [Empty]

The table below the form has the following data:

Location	Name	Location Type	New Zone	New Zone Name	Effective Date	Status
999	kavitha_stockledg...	Store				

3. Add locations to the zone.

---

**Note:** When you add a location to a zone that was previously saved, a location move is scheduled. See "[Maintain Location Move](#)".

---

4. To delete a location from a zone.
  - a. Select a location.
  - b. Click **Delete**. The location is removed from the list of locations.

---

**Note:** When you add or delete a location in a zone, a location move request is created in Approved status. The location move request will wait for the next scheduling batch, and that batch program will process the addition or deletion. If you want to cancel the approved location move request, you can change the location move request from Approved back to Worksheet status before the scheduling batch is run. See "[Reset a Location Move Request to Worksheet Status](#)" for more information.

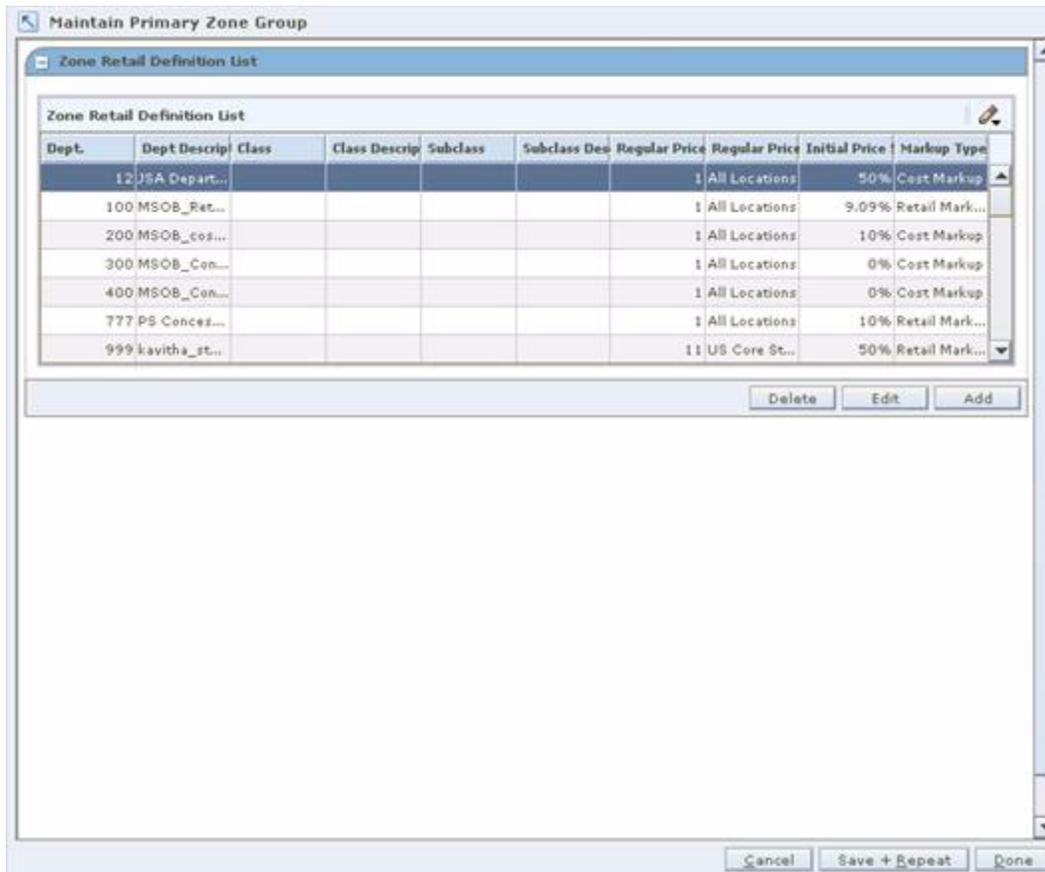
---

5. Click **Done** to save any changes close the workspace.

### Create a Primary Zone Group

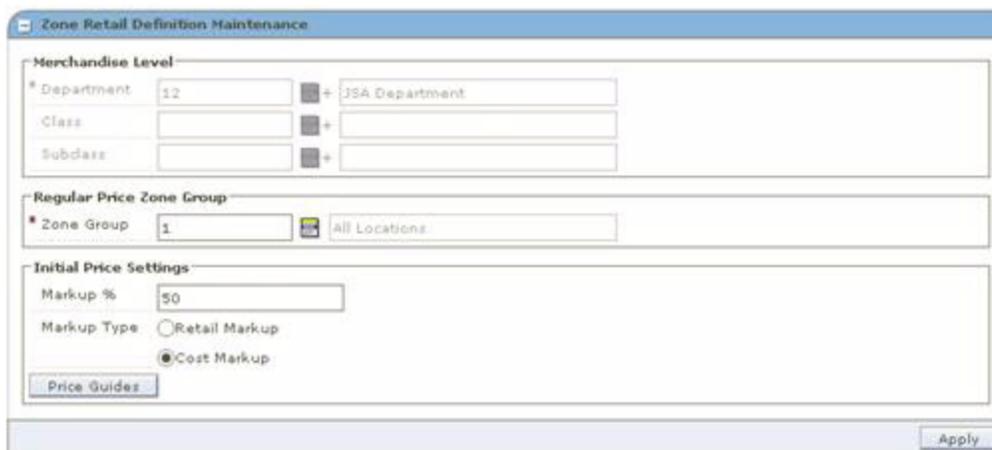
**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Zone Structure > Maintain Primary Zone Groups. The Maintain Primary Zone Group workspace opens.

**Figure 4–22 Maintain Primary Zone Group Workspace**



1. Click **Add**. The Zone Retail Definition Maintenance pane opens.

**Figure 4–23 Zone Retail Definition Maintenance Pane**



2. In the Department field, enter the ID of the department, or click the LOV button and select a department.
3. In the Class field, enter the ID of the class, or click the LOV button and select a class.
4. In the Subclass field, enter the ID of the subclass, or click the LOV button and select a subclass.

---

**Note:** You must select the merchandise hierarchy levels above class and subclass before you identify class and subclass. Class and subclass are not required. You can define a primary zone group at the Department level.

---

5. In the Zone Group field, enter the ID of the zone group you want to associate with the selected merchandise hierarchy level, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.

---

**Note:** Regular price zone groups are the only type of zone groups that can be attached to a primary zone group.

---

6. In the Initial Price Settings pane:
  - a. In the Markup % field, enter the percent of markup that is applied to the cost of the item.
  - b. Select either Retail Markup or Cost Markup to indicate how the markup is calculated.
7. To add a price guide, click **Price Guides**. The Price Guide Definition dialog opens.

**Figure 4–24 Price Guide Definition Dialog**

Zone Currency	Price Guide
EUR	<input type="text"/>
USD	<input type="text"/>
CAD	<input type="text"/>

8. For each currency, enter a price guide ID, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

**Note:** Only price guides that are associated with the department selected in the Zone Retail Definition Maintenance pane appear. For each currency, you can select a price guide, if a price guide has been set up for the currency and department.

---

9. Click **OK** to save any changes and close the window.
10. Click **Apply** to add your changes to the table.
11. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Maintain a Primary Zone Group

**Navigate:** From the Zone Structure menu, select Maintain Primary Zone Groups. The Maintain Primary Zone Group workspace opens.

1. Click **Edit**. The Zone Retail Definition Maintenance pane opens.

**Figure 4–25 Zone Retail Definition Maintenance Pane**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Zone Retail Definition Maintenance". It is divided into three main sections:

- Merchandise Level:** Contains three rows of input fields. The first row is labeled "\* Department" and has the value "12". The second row is labeled "Class" and is empty. The third row is labeled "Subclass" and is empty. To the right of each row is a small square icon and a "+" sign.
- Regular Price Zone Group:** Contains two rows of input fields. The first row is labeled "\* Zone Group" and has the value "1". The second row is labeled "All Locations" and is empty.
- Initial Price Settings:** Contains two rows of input fields. The first row is labeled "Markup %" and has the value "50". The second row is labeled "Markup Type" and has two radio buttons: "Retail Markup" (unselected) and "Cost Markup" (selected).

At the bottom left of the window is a button labeled "Price Guides". At the bottom right is a button labeled "Apply".

2. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.
3. Click **Apply**.
4. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Delete a Primary Zone Group

1. Select a primary zone group.
2. Click **Delete**. A message is displayed: "All selected rows will be deleted."
3. Click **Yes**. The primary zone group is removed from the table.
4. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Codes

The foundation area allows you to maintain reason codes and link codes. Reason codes are used to explain the rationale for clearances and price changes. Link codes are used to associate items to each other at a location and price them exactly the same.

## Link Codes

The Maintain Link Codes area allows you to assign link codes to a transaction level item/location. The items can be associated to the code through the merchandise hierarchy, at the item level, or through item attributes such as diff or diff type. Locations can be associated to the code through the zone group or zone or by entering the location directly.

## Market Basket Codes

The Maintain Market Basket Codes area allows you to assign market baskets codes to an item/zone. The items can be associated to the code through the merchandise hierarchy, at the item level, or through item attributes such as diff or diff type.

## Create a Code

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Foundation > Code Maintenance. The Code Maintenance workspace opens.

**Figure 4–26 Code Maintenance Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Code Maintenance' window with a table of code entries. The table has four columns: Type, Code, Description, and SIM. A dropdown menu is open for the 'Type' field of the last row, showing options: Regular Price, Clearance Price, Link Code, and Credit Type.

Type	Code	Description	SIM
Credit Type	GBJ Credit	GBJ Credit	
Clearance Price	1	Clearance	<input type="radio"/>
Regular Price	2	Price Change	<input type="radio"/>
Credit Type	creditpro1	also creditpromo	
Credit Type	creditpro2	also creditpromo	
Credit Type	AMEX BLACK	also creditpromo	
Regular Price	PC1	Price Change 1	<input type="radio"/>
Clearance Price	CL1	Clearance 1	<input type="radio"/>
Link Code	LC1	Link Code 1	
Credit Type	Mastercard	Mastercard	
Clearance Price	101	Clearance Code	<input type="radio"/>
Link Code	LinkCode	LinkCode Item	
Link Code	LCodeSDate	LinkCodeSuggestDate	
Credit Type	creditpro0	also creditpromo	
Credit Type	Visa	Visa Credit Card	
Link Code	MYP LCode	MYP LinkCode	
Credit Type	creditpro3	also creditpromo	
Link Code	LinkSDate	Linkcode Suggest date	

Buttons: New, Delete, Cancel, Save + Repeat, Done

1. Click **New**. The next line on the table is enabled.
2. In the Type field, select one of the following types of code you are creating.
  - Regular Price
  - Clearance Price
  - Link Code
  - Credit Type

3. In the Code field, enter a unique identifier for the code.
4. In the Description field, enter description of the code.
5. In the SIM field, select the radio button to indicate that the reason code is used exclusively by Store Inventory Management (SIM).

---

**Note:** Only one reason code for price changes and clearances can be assigned as a SIM reason code.

---

6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Edit a Code

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Foundation > Code Maintenance. The Code Maintenance workspace opens.

**Figure 4–27 Code Maintenance Window**

Type	Code	Description	SIM
Regular Price	RegPrc1	Regular price code#1	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Clearance Price	ClrPrc1	Clearance price code#1	<input type="radio"/>
Link Code	LnkCd1	Link code#1	
Link Code	LnkCd2	Link code#2	
Link Code	LnkCd3	Link code#3	
Clearance Price	2	Clearance Price Change	<input type="radio"/>
Regular Price	1	Regular Price Change	<input type="radio"/>
Regular Price	RegPrc2	Regular price code#2	<input type="radio"/>
Clearance Price	ClrPrc2	Clearance price code#2	<input type="radio"/>
Link Code	LnkCd4	Link code#4	
Regular Price	SIMREG	Externally generated Price Change	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Clearance Price	SIMCLEAR	Externally generated Clearance	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
Link Code	LC-1-SH	Link Code Test	

Buttons: New, Delete, Cancel, Save + Repeat, Done

1. Select the field you want to edit.
2. Make necessary changes.
3. In the SIM field, select the radio button to indicate that the reason code is used exclusively by Store Inventory Management (SIM).

You are prompted to confirm your choice to change the SIM reason code.

---

**Note:** Only one reason code for price changes and clearances can be assigned as a SIM reason code.

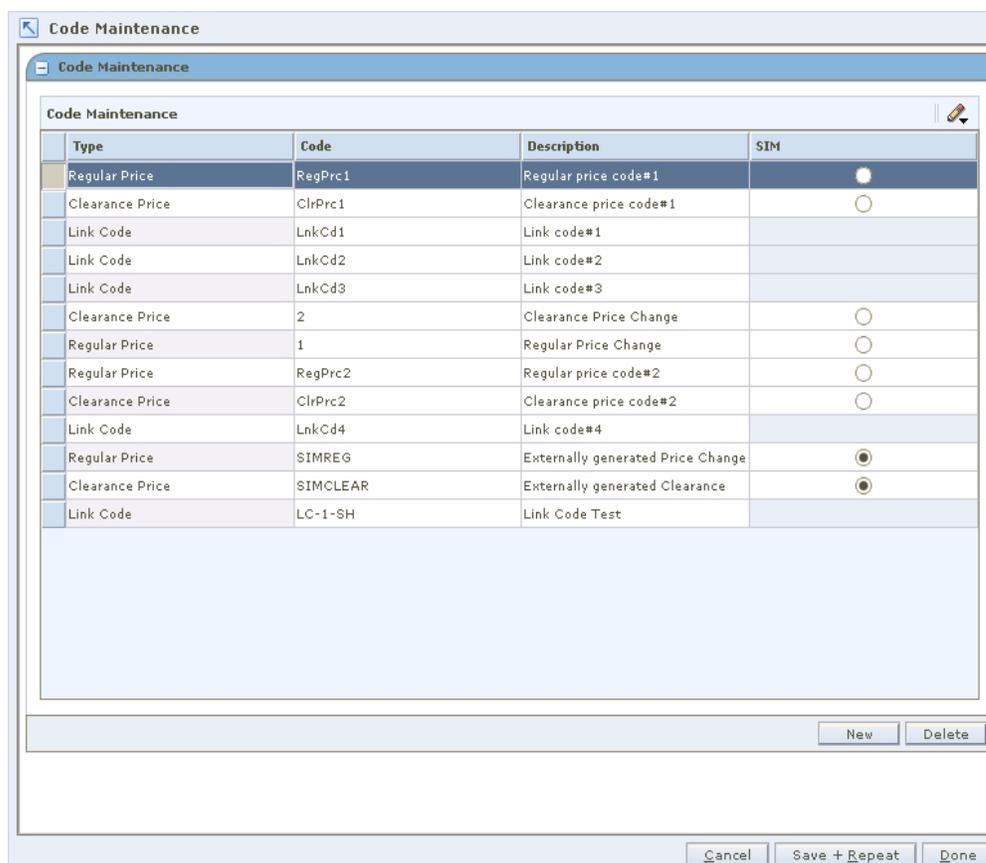
---

4. Click **Save + Repeat** to commit your changes.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Delete a Code

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Foundation > Code Maintenance. The Code Maintenance workspace opens.

**Figure 4–28 Code Maintenance Window**



1. Select the record you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**. The record is removed from the table.

---

**Note:** You cannot delete a reason or link code that is in use.

---

3. Click **Done** to close the window.

## Create Link Codes

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Link Codes > Create Link Codes. The Create Link Codes workspace opens.

Figure 4–29 Create Link Codes Window

The screenshot shows the 'Create Link Codes' window. The form is organized into two columns of fields. The left column includes: Department, Class, Subclass, Item Type (dropdown), Item Level (dropdown), Diff Type (dropdown), Item, and Diff. The right column includes: Zone Group, Zone, Location, and Link Code. Each field has a small icon and a '+' sign next to it. Below the form is a table with the following columns: Item, Item Description, Parent Item, Parent Item Description, Location, Location Description, Link Code, and Link Code Description. Each column has a 'Filter by:' dropdown. At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Save + Repeat', and 'Done'.

1. Enter the Department for which you want to create the link code.

---

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above. You can enter more than one department, in which case you cannot enter class or subclass.

---

2. Select the item type for the link code from the Item Type drop-down list.
  - **Item:** Select an item for the link code.
    - a. In the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, or Transaction Level Item.
    - b. If enabled, select a diff type from the Diff Type drop-down list.
    - c. In the Item field, enter the ID of the item(s) to which you want the link code, or click the LOV button and select an item.
    - d. If enabled, enter the ID of the diff(s), or click the LOV button and select a diff.
  - **Item List:** Select an item list for the link code.
 

Enter the ID of the item list you want the link code to apply to, or click the LOV button and select an item list.
3. Select the locations for the link code:
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the zones to which the link code should apply, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.

- **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone that contains the locations to which the link code should apply, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
  - **Location:** Enter the ID of the location the link code should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a location.
4. Select the link code. Enter the ID of the link code that will be created, or click the LOV button and select a link code.
  5. Click **Apply**. The following may occur:
    - a. A row is added to the table for each transaction level item/location that meets the selected criteria.
    - b. An existing row changes based on the selected criteria.
  6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Maintain Link Codes

This section describes how to search for a link code, override a link code, update link codes, and delete a link code relationship.

### Search for a Link Code

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Link Codes > Maintain Link Codes. The Maintain Link Codes workspace opens.

**Figure 4–30** *Maintain Link Codes Window*

The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Link Codes' window with a 'Link Codes Search' pane. The search criteria are organized into two columns:

Field	Value	Field	Value
Department	[Empty]	Zone Group	[Empty]
Class	[Empty]	Zone	[Empty]
Subclass	[Empty]	Location	[Empty]
Item Type	Item	Link Code	[Empty]
Item Level	Transaction Level Item		
Diff Type	- Select -		
Item	[Empty]		
Diff	[Empty]		

Buttons: Clear, Search, Cancel

1. In the Link Codes Search pane, enter criteria as necessary to restrict the search to the link codes you want to maintain.

- Click **Search**. Your results appear in the Maintain Link Codes table.

**Figure 4–31 Maintain Link Codes Table Window**

Item	Item Description	Parent Item	Parent Item Desc	Location	Location Description	Link Code	Link Code Description
Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼
100261021	RPM QA Item: B...	100261005	RPM QA Item	4545	Blue Store	LnkCd2	Link code#2
100261021	RPM QA Item: B...	100261005	RPM QA Item	4591	ST Wholesale A2	LnkCd2	Link code#2
100261030	RPM QA Item: R...	100261005	RPM QA Item	4545	Blue Store	LnkCd2	Link code#2
100261030	RPM QA Item: R...	100261005	RPM QA Item	4591	ST Wholesale A2	LnkCd2	Link code#2
100278077	RPM QA Item: R...	100278069	RPM QA Item	4580	st whole	LnkCd1	Link code#1
100278085	RPM QA Item: B...	100278069	RPM QA Item	4547	ST StoreA1	LnkCd1	Link code#1
100278085	RPM QA Item: B...	100278069	RPM QA Item	4580	st whole	LnkCd1	Link code#1
100529112	Roland			7025	Hampton store	LnkCd1	Link code#1

### Maintain or Override a Link Code

- Search for and retrieve the link codes you want to maintain. Your results appear in the Maintain Link Codes table.

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above. You may enter more than one department, in which case you cannot enter class or subclass.

- Select the locations for the link code:
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the zones the link code should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone that contains the locations the link code should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
  - **Location:** Enter the ID of the location the link code should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a location.
- Select the item type for the link code from the Item Type drop-down list.
  - **Item:** Select an item or for the link code.
    - a. In the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, or Transaction Level Item.
    - b. If enabled, select a diff type from the Diff Type drop-down list.
    - c. In the Item field, enter the ID of the item(s) you want the link code to apply to, or click the LOV button and select an item.
    - d. If enabled, enter the ID of the diff(s), or click the LOV button and select a diff.
  - **Item List:** Select an item list for the link code.
 

Enter the ID of the item list you want the link code to apply to, or click the LOV button and select an item list.

- Click **Apply**. The following may occur:

- A row is added to the table for each transaction level item/location that meets the selected criteria.
  - An existing row changes based on the selected criteria.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Update Link Codes

1. In the Maintain Link Codes table, select the rows you want to edit by clicking the box to the left of the row. Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.
2. Right-click in the Link Code field. The Link Code dialog opens.

**Figure 4–32** Link Code Dialog Box

3. Enter the ID of the link code in the Edited Value field, or click the LOV button and select a code.
4. Click **OK**. Your changes appear in the table.

### Delete a Link Code Relationship

1. In the Maintain Link Codes table, select the row you want to delete by clicking the box to the left of the row. Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
3. Click **Yes**. The link code relationship is deleted.

## Maintain Market Basket Codes

This section describes how to search for a Market Basket Code, maintain Market Basket Codes, update Market Basket Codes, and delete a Market Basket Code Relationship.

### Search for a Market Basket Code

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Market Basket Codes > Maintain Market Basket Codes. The Maintain Market Basket Codes workspace opens.

**Figure 4–33 Maintain Market Basket Codes Window**

1. Enter criteria as necessary to restrict the search to the market basket codes you want to maintain.
2. Click **Search**. Your results appear in the Market Basket Codes table.

**Figure 4–34 Market Basket Codes Table**

Item	Item Description	Parent Item	Parent Item Description	Zone Group	Zone	Margin Market Basket Code	Margin Market Basket Code Description	Co
<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Filter by:</i>	<i>Fi</i>
100275010	RPM QA Item:R...	100275001	RPM QA Item	405	342			NC
100275028	RPM QA Item:R...	100275001	RPM QA Item	405	342			NC
100278077	RPM QA Item:R...	100278069	RPM QA Item	562	504	MBC1	Code 1	
100278095	RPM QA Item:R...	100278069	RPM QA Item	562	504	MBC1	Code 1	
100481673	rpm qa:Red	100481665	rpm qa	562	504	MBC1	Code 1	
100481681	rpm qa:Blue	100481665	rpm qa	562	504	MBC1	Code 1	

**Maintain Market Basket Codes**

1. Search for and retrieve the market basket codes you want to maintain. Your results appear in the Maintain Market Basket Codes table.
2. Enter the ID of the merchandise level you want to apply the market basket to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level.

---



---

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above. You may enter more than one department, in which case you cannot enter class or subclass.

---



---

3. Select the zones for the market basket:
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the zones the market basket should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone the market basket should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
4. Select the item type for the market basket code from the Item Type drop-down list.
  - **Item:** Select an item for the market basket code.
    - a. In the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, or Transaction Level Item.
    - b. If enabled, select a diff type from the Diff Type drop-down list.
    - c. In the Item field, enter the ID of the item(s) you want the market basket code(s) to apply to, or click the LOV button and select an item.
    - d. If enabled, enter the ID of the diff, or click the LOV button and select a diff.
  - **Item List:** Select an item list for the market basket code.  
Enter the ID of the item list you want the market basket code(s) to apply to, or click the LOV button and select an item list.
5. In the Margin Market Basket Code field, enter the ID of the code, or click the LOV button and select the code.  
OR  
Select the Remove Margin Market Basket Code checkbox to disassociate the margin market basket code from the item(s)/zone(s) that meet the selected criteria.
6. In the Competitive Market Basket Code field, enter the ID of the code, or click the LOV button and select the code.  
OR  
Select the Remove Competitive Market Basket Code checkbox to disassociate the competitive market basket code from the item(s)/zone(s) that meet the selected criteria.
7. Click **Apply**. The following may occur:
  - A row is added to the table for each transaction level item/location that meets the selected criteria.
  - An existing row changes based on the selected criteria.
8. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Update Market Basket Codes

1. In the Market Basket Codes table, select the row you want to edit by clicking the box to the left of the row. Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.
2. Right click the field you want to edit:

- Margin Market Basket Code - The Margin Market Basket Code dialog opens.

**Figure 4–35** Margin Market Basket Code Dialog

- Competitive Market Basket Code - The Competitive Market Basket Code dialog opens.

**Figure 4–36** Competitive Market Basket Code Dialog

3. Enter the ID of the Market Basket Code in the Edited Value field, or click the LOV button and select a code. Or Clear the field to dissociate the market basket code from the selected record.
4. Click **OK**. Your changes appear in the table.

### Delete a Market Basket Code Relationship

1. In the Market Basket Codes table, select the row you want to delete by clicking the box to the left of the row. Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
3. Click **Yes**. The market basket code relationship is deleted.

## Calendars

Calendars are used to define review periods for your pricing strategies. A review period is the amount of time that you have to act on pricing events generated in the worksheet before they expire.

After you create a calendar, you can maintain the different aspects of that calendar. You can modify the name, description, or end date of the calendar. You can also change the rules and exceptions for future review periods.

## Create a Calendar

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Calendar > Create Calendar. The Create Calendar workspace opens.

**Figure 4–37 Create Calendar Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Create Calendar' window with the following fields and sections:

- Calendar Setup:**
  - \* Name: [Text Field]
  - Description: [Text Field] [Edit Icon]
  - \* Start Date: [Date Picker]
  - \* End Date: [Date Picker]
  - \* Review Period Duration: [Text Field]
  - \* Days Between Review Periods: [Text Field]
- Review Period Setup:**
  - Rules: [Dropdown Menu] (Both)
  - Exception Frequency: [Text Field] (1)
  - New Calendar to Assign to Strategies When Calendar Expires:
    - Name: [Text Field] [Date Picker]

Buttons at the bottom: Calculate Review Periods, Cancel, Save + Repeat, Done.

1. In the Calendar Setup pane, in the Name field, enter a name for the calendar.
2. In the Description field, you can enter a description for the Calendar. Click the button next to the description field to open an editing window.

## Set Up the Calendar

1. In the Calendar Setup area, in the Start Date field, enter the date the calendar becomes active, or click the calendar button and select a date.
2. In the End Date field, enter the date the calendar is no longer active.
3. In the Review Period Duration field, enter the length of the review period in days.
4. In the Days Between Review Periods field, enter the number of days between review periods.

---

**Note:** The last review period duration plus the days between review periods must exactly reach the end date of the calendar. If this is not the case, the system can automatically adjust the end date, or you can choose to modify the Review Period Duration, Days Between Review Periods or End Date fields yourself.

---

## Set Up Review Periods

1. In the Review Period Setup area, from the Rules drop-down list, select the type of rules to apply for the review period.
  - **Inclusion:** Items that meet inclusion candidate rules will be highlighted in the worksheet.
  - **Exclusion:** Items that meet exclusion candidate rules will be excluded from the worksheet.
  - **Both:** Both, inclusion and exclusion candidate rules are applied for the review period.
  - **None:** No rules are applied for the review period.
2. In the Exception Frequency field, enter the frequency, in review periods, that RPM should process exceptions from the merchandising system.
  - Enter 1 for every review period.
  - Enter 2 for every other review period.
  - Enter 3 for every third review period.
  - Enter 0 if you never want RPM to process exceptions.
3. Click **Calculate Review Periods**. The review periods are calculated and the Review Period Details pane opens.

**Figure 4–38 Review Period Details Window**

Start Date	End Date	Rules	Exception
01/26/2008	01/26/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/27/2008	01/27/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/28/2008	01/28/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/29/2008	01/29/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/30/2008	01/30/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/31/2008	01/31/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/01/2008	02/01/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/02/2008	02/02/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/03/2008	02/03/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/04/2008	02/04/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/05/2008	02/05/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/06/2008	02/06/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/07/2008	02/07/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/08/2008	02/08/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/09/2008	02/09/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/10/2008	02/10/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/11/2008	02/11/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/12/2008	02/12/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/13/2008	02/13/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

4. In the Review Period Details pane, in the Rules and Exceptions fields, edit as necessary for each review period.
5. Click **Done** at the bottom of the workspace. The new calendar is added and the Maintain Calendar workspace closes.

## Maintain a Calendar

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Calendar > Maintain Calendar. The Maintain Calendar workspace opens.

**Figure 4-39** *Maintain Calendar Window*

Name	Description	Start Date	End Date	Review Period Duration	Days Between Reviews	Expired
MMCal	Maintain Margin C...	12/01/2007	01/29/2008	4	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
AnotherDailyCal	Another Daily Cal...	01/26/2008	03/15/2008	1	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
MMCal2	str dt 01/11/08	01/11/2008	02/27/2008	4	0	<input type="checkbox"/>
DailyCal	Daily Calendar	12/01/2007	01/25/2008	1	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Buttons: Delete, Edit

Buttons: Cancel, Save + Repeat, Done

1. Select the calendar you want to maintain from the Calendar List pane.
2. Click **Edit**. The Calendar Details and Review Period Details panes are displayed and the fields that can be changed are enabled.

Figure 4–40 Review Period Details

Start Date	End Date	Rules	Exception
01/26/2008	01/26/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/27/2008	01/27/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/28/2008	01/28/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/29/2008	01/29/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/30/2008	01/30/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
01/31/2008	01/31/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/01/2008	02/01/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/02/2008	02/02/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/03/2008	02/03/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/04/2008	02/04/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/05/2008	02/05/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/06/2008	02/06/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/07/2008	02/07/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/08/2008	02/08/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/09/2008	02/09/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/10/2008	02/10/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/11/2008	02/11/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/12/2008	02/12/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
02/13/2008	02/13/2008	Both	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Figure 4–41 Calendar Details Window

Calendar Details																							
* Name	AnotherDailyCal																						
Description	Another Daily Calendar																						
<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Calendar Setup</th> <th>Review Period Setup</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>* Start Date</td> <td>Rules</td> </tr> <tr> <td>01/26/2008</td> <td>Both</td> </tr> <tr> <td>* End Date</td> <td>Exception Frequency</td> </tr> <tr> <td>03/15/2008</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>* Review Period Duration</td> <td colspan="2">New Calendar to Assign to Strategies When Calendar Expires</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td colspan="2">Name</td> </tr> <tr> <td>* Days Between Review Periods</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		Calendar Setup	Review Period Setup	* Start Date	Rules	01/26/2008	Both	* End Date	Exception Frequency	03/15/2008	1	* Review Period Duration	New Calendar to Assign to Strategies When Calendar Expires		1	Name		* Days Between Review Periods			0		
Calendar Setup	Review Period Setup																						
* Start Date	Rules																						
01/26/2008	Both																						
* End Date	Exception Frequency																						
03/15/2008	1																						
* Review Period Duration	New Calendar to Assign to Strategies When Calendar Expires																						
1	Name																						
* Days Between Review Periods																							
0																							
Calculate Review Periods																							

3. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.
  - Calendar Detail
    - **End Date:** Select the end date for the calendar.
    - **New Calendar to Assign to Strategies when Calendar expires:** Select the calendar that replaces the current calendar after the end date.
  - Review Period Details
    - **Rules:** Select Inclusion, Exclusion, Both, or None.

- 
- **Exceptions:** Select if exceptions, from the merchandising system, should be processed during the review period.
4. Click **Calculate Review Periods**. If edits are made to the calendar detail, you must press the Calculate Review Periods button.
  5. Click **Done**.

#### **Delete a Calendar**

1. Select the calendar you want to delete from the list.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
3. Click **Yes**. The calendar is deleted.
4. Click **Done** to close the window.

### **Maintain Location Move**

You can move a location from one zone to another within a zone group. The process allows a location to keep all location level pricing events while it transfers from the old zone's pricing strategies to those of the new zone, while at the same time inheriting the pricing events of the new zone.

---

---

**Note:** System options control whether promotions are allowed to overlap a scheduled location move, and whether a location automatically inherits pricing of the new zone. See "[System Options Definitions](#)" for more information about Location Moves options.

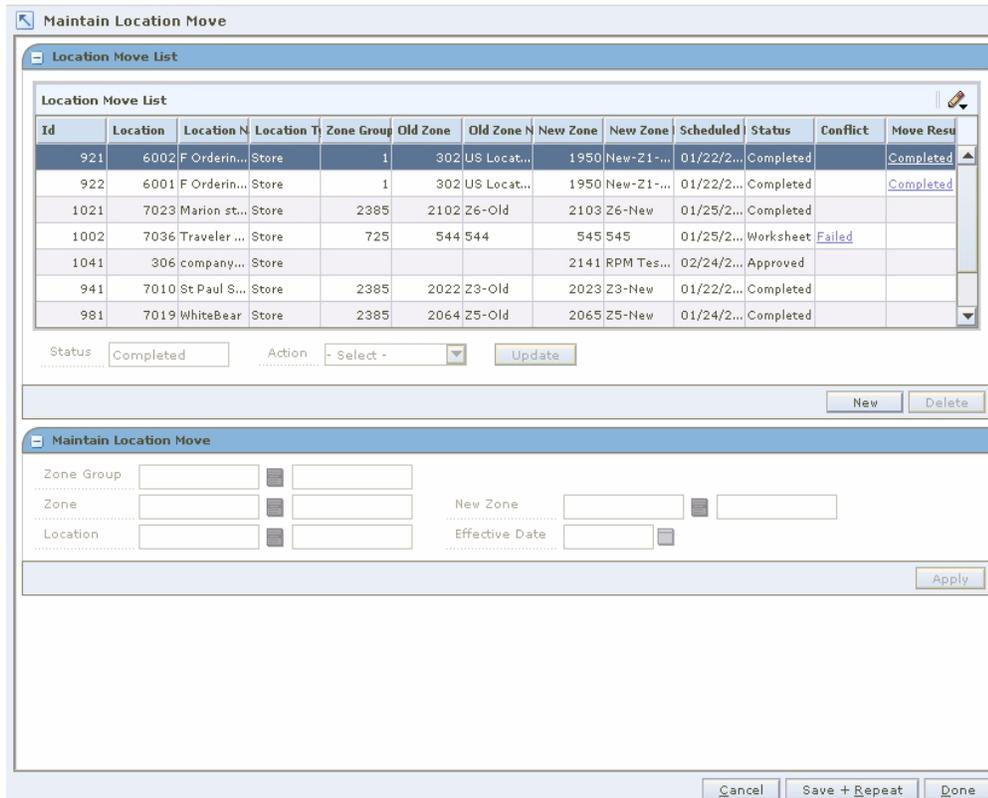
---

---

#### **Request a Location Move**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Zone Structure > Maintain Location Move. The Maintain Location Move workspace opens.

**Figure 4–42 Maintain Location Move Window**



**Create a Location Move Request**

1. Click **New**. The Zone Group Field is enabled on the Maintain Location Move pane.
2. In the Zone Group field, enter the zone group of the location you need to move, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
3. In the Zone field, enter zone of the location you need to move, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
4. In the Location field, enter the location you need to move, or click the LOV button and select a Location.
5. In the New Zone field, enter the zone to move the location to, or click the LOV button and select the new zone.
6. In the Effective Date field, enter the date the location should move zones, or click the calendar button and select a date.

---

**Note:** The Effective Date you can set depends on the number of days set in the system option Location Move Lead Time. The earliest date a location move can be created is today's date plus the location move lead time.

---

7. Click **Apply**. The location move request appears with a status of Worksheet on the Location Move list.

### Submit a Location Move Request for Approval

1. Select a location move request with a status of Worksheet.
2. Select Submit from the Action drop-down list.
3. Click **Update**.
4. A confirmation prompt is displayed. Click **Yes**.
5. The location move request is changed to a status of Pending.
6. If no conflicts are found, the location move request is changed to a status of Submitted.

After a location move request is in Submitted status, the request can be approved, rejected, or returned to Worksheet status.

### Approve a Location Move Request

1. Select Approve from the Action drop-down list.
2. Click **Update**.
3. A confirmation prompt is displayed. Click **Yes**.
4. The location move request is changed to a status of Pending.
5. If no conflicts are found, the location move request is changed to a status of Approved.

---

---

**Note:** An alert is displayed when conflict checking is complete.

---

---

After a location move request is in Approved status, the move will be scheduled by the location move scheduling batch job. A location move request in Approved status can be changed back to Worksheet status, edited, and resubmitted if necessary. A location move in Scheduled status cannot be moved back to Approved, Worksheet, or Submitted status.

### Reject a Location Move Request

1. Select a location move request with a status of Submitted.
2. Select Reject from the Action drop-down list.
3. Click **Update**.
4. A confirmation prompt is displayed. Click **Yes**.
5. The location move request is changed to a status of Rejected.

A rejected location move can be changed back to Worksheet status. In Worksheet status, the request can be edited and resubmitted, or it can be deleted.

### Reset a Location Move Request to Worksheet Status

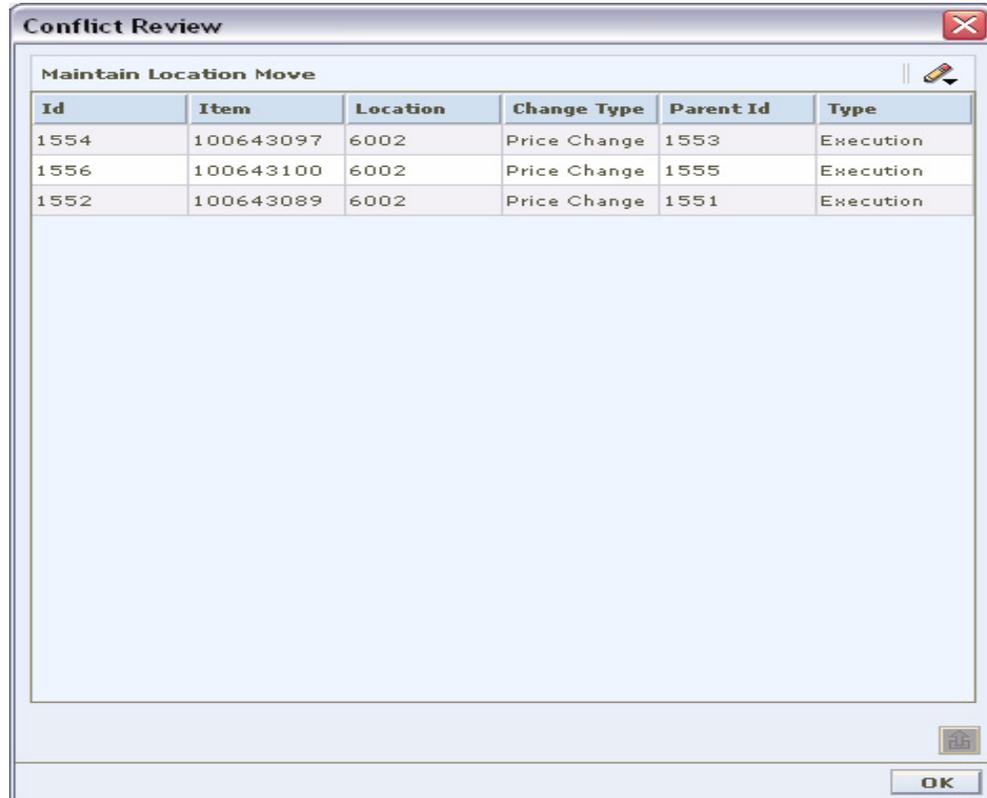
1. Select a location move with a status of Failed, Rejected, Submitted, or Approved.
2. Select Worksheet from the Action drop-down list.
3. Click **Update**. The location move request is changed back to Worksheet status.
4. Edit the location move request as needed. If the request failed, fix the conflicts that caused the failure.

After you edit a location move request, you can submit the request again.

## View Conflicts for a Failed Location Move Request

1. In the Conflict column, click the Failed link. The Conflict Review window opens with the conflict information displayed.

**Figure 4–43 Conflict Review Window**



The screenshot shows a window titled "Conflict Review" with a close button in the top right corner. Below the title bar is a header "Maintain Location Move" with a small icon of a pencil and eraser. The main content is a table with the following data:

Id	Item	Location	Change Type	Parent Id	Type
1554	100643097	6002	Price Change	1553	Execution
1556	100643100	6002	Price Change	1555	Execution
1552	100643089	6002	Price Change	1551	Execution

At the bottom right of the window is an "OK" button.

2. Click OK to close the Conflict Review window.

## Delete a Location Move Request

---

**Note:** Only location moves in Worksheet status can be deleted.

---

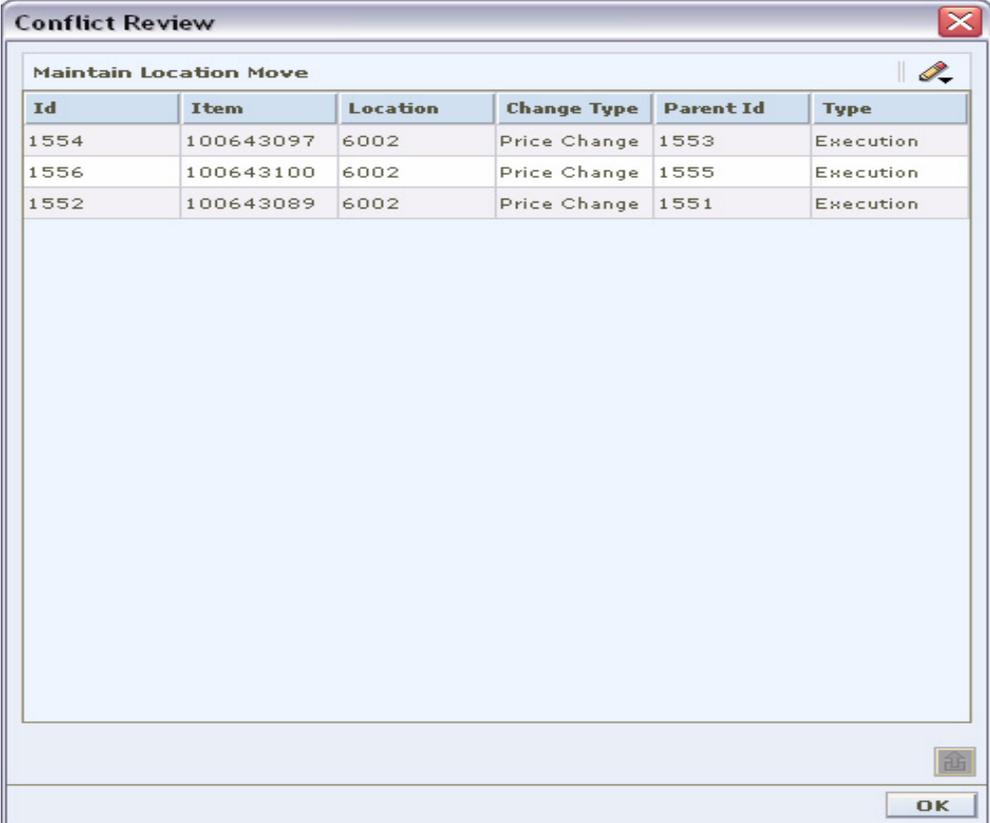
1. Select a location move with a status of Worksheet.
2. Click **Delete**.
3. A confirmation prompt is displayed. Click **Yes**. The location move request is deleted.

## View Location Move Results

If RPM created any exceptions or exclusions in order for the location to be moved successfully, those items are viewable in the move results column.

In the Move Results column, click the Completed link. The Conflict Review window opens, with move results information displayed.

Figure 4-44 Conflict Review Window

The image shows a software window titled "Conflict Review". At the top, there is a header bar with the text "Maintain Location Move" and a small icon of a pencil and eraser. Below the header is a table with six columns: "Id", "Item", "Location", "Change Type", "Parent Id", and "Type". The table contains three rows of data. Below the table is a large empty rectangular area. At the bottom right of the window, there is an "OK" button and a small icon of a document with a checkmark.

Id	Item	Location	Change Type	Parent Id	Type
1554	100643097	6002	Price Change	1553	Execution
1556	100643100	6002	Price Change	1555	Execution
1552	100643089	6002	Price Change	1551	Execution

## Finance Details

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Finance Details > Create/Maintain Finance Details. The Maintain Finance Details workspace opens.

Figure 4–45 Maintain Finance Details window

**Finance Details**

\* Credit Type:

\* Bank Name:

\* BIN Number From:  \* To:

Credit Type	Bank Name	BIN Number From	BIN Number To
creditpro0	Bank of America	1000	9999
AMEN BLACK	Bank of America	555	999

1. To add a new credit card type, click **New**.
  - To create a new credit card type, refer to "[Create a Code](#)".
2. In the Credit Type field, select the credit card type.
3. In the Bank Name field, enter the name of the credit card issuing bank.
4. In the BIN Number From and To fields, enter the respective bank index numbers.
5. Click **Apply**.

---

---

## Pricing Strategies

### Maintain Pricing Strategies

Pricing strategies allow you to define how prices are proposed when pricing worksheets are generated. You can define pricing strategies at the department, class, or subclass level to identify the items that are affected by the strategy. The lowest merchandise level you can define for a pricing strategy is determined by the aggregation levels defined for the department. An item/location can be on multiple regular pricing strategies as long as the review periods within the calendar assigned do not overlap (clearance, competitive, or margin) and one maintain margin pricing strategy which can overlap with a (clearance, competitive, or margin) strategy.

After you have created a pricing strategy, you can maintain different aspects of the pricing strategy.

---

---

**Note:** Updates to pricing strategies affect only future worksheets. Current worksheets will not be updated.

---

---

### Area Differential Pricing

Area differential pricing allows you to set prices for items at a particular zone or zone group differently than another zone or zone group. The price differential is based on the rules you define. Area differentials can be used when you create a price change to ensure consistent pricing. These price changes are generated by selecting Price Changes for Area Differentials within the Price Change task pad dialog. These price changes are generated by selecting Price Changes for Area Differentials within the Price Change task pad dialog. Differential pricing cannot be applied to other pricing events, such as clearances or promotions.

When creating an area differential:

- You first establish a primary area, by defining the merchandise hierarchy and zone hierarchy for the primary area.
- Next, select the zones that fall within the secondary area.
- Then define how prices for the items in the hierarchy will differ in the secondary areas from the prices in the primary area. You can choose to price the item higher or lower by percent, or set the price to the same as the primary area.
- You can choose to exclude certain items in the merchandise hierarchy from the secondary area differential prices.

- You can choose to create and associate a competitive pricing strategy with the secondary area differential.

---

**Note:** Area differential pricing allows you to set prices for items at a particular zone or zones within a zone group or all of the zones in the selected zone group, but not for the zone group.

RPM allows you to select primary area zone as mandatory and then secondary zones, so you can't create Area differential price strategy for a zone group.

---

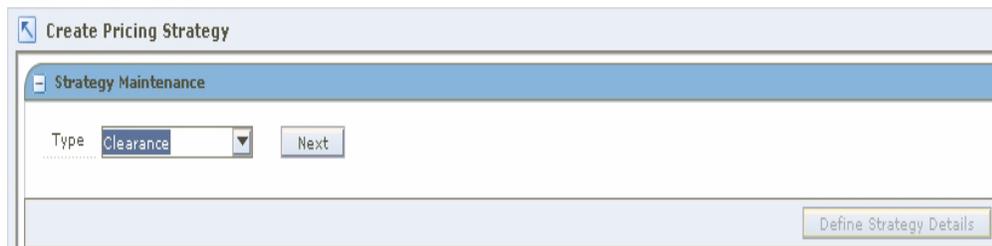
Area differentials are applied when price changes are created manually in the Price Change Dialog or from the Create Price Changes for Area Differentials dialog. They are also created in the worksheet if there are item/zone combinations brought into the worksheet that are part of the primary area on an area differential strategy. When competitive information is associated with an area differential, the worksheet chooses the lower of the retails proposed by the strategies.

If you set up the secondary area to be auto-approved, secondary area price changes are conflict checked, and if no conflict exists, created in approved status. If conflicts exist, the secondary area price change is created in worksheet status. If you set up the secondary area to not be auto-approved, secondary area price changes are created in worksheet status. See ["Change the Status of a Price Change"](#) for additional information about status changes and conflict checking.

### Create an Area Differential Pricing Strategy

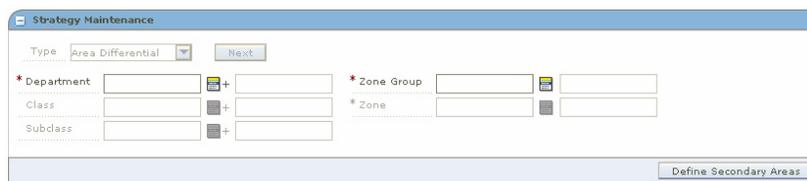
**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Pricing Strategy > Create Pricing Strategy. The Create Pricing Strategy workspace opens with the Strategy Maintenance pane.

**Figure 5–1 Strategy Maintenance Pane**



1. In the Type field, select Area Differential.
2. Click Next. Additional fields appear.

**Figure 5–2 Strategy Maintenance - Area Differential**



3. Enter the ID of the merchandise level you want to apply the area differential to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level.

---

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above, if the definition of the department in the aggregation level dialog allows it.

---

4. Select the zones that define the primary area:
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the area differential price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the area differential price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
5. Click **Define Secondary Areas**. The Area Differential Strategy Details pane opens.

**Figure 5–3 Area Differential Strategy Details Pane**

The screenshot shows the 'Area Differential Strategy Details' pane. At the top is a table with the following columns: Zone Id, Zone Name, Differential, Percent, Auto Approve, and Price Guide. Below the table are several input fields and buttons. On the right side of the input fields are buttons labeled 'New', 'Edit', and 'Delete'. At the bottom right is an 'Apply' button. The input fields include:
 

- \* Price Zone Id: A text input field with a '+' button to its right.
- Price Guides: A text input field with a '+' button to its right.
- \* Differential: A dropdown menu currently showing '- Select -'.
- Percent: A text input field.
- Auto Approve: A checkbox.

 Below these fields are two expandable sections: 'Item Exclusion' and 'Competitor', each with a right-pointing arrow and a horizontal line below it.

### Define Secondary Areas

1. Click **New** to enable the fields.
2. In the Price Zone field, enter the ID of the zone that you want to add to the secondary area of the area differential price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
3. In the Price Guides field, enter the ID of the price guide you want to apply to the differential pricing, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

**Note:** Only price guides associated with the selected departments can be selected.

---

4. In the Differential field, select how the price differs from the primary area:
  - **Price Higher:** The items at the specified secondary area are priced higher by the percentage entered in the Percent field.
  - **Price Lower:** The items at the specified secondary area are priced lower by the percentage entered in the Percent field.
  - **Price Equal:** The items at the specified secondary area are priced the same as the items in the primary area.
5. In the Percent field, enter the percent by which the secondary area price is different from the primary area price.
6. Select the Auto Approve check box to indicate price changes for the area differential should be created in Approved status.

### Exclude Items From the Area Differential

---

---

**Note:** Expand the Item Exclusion section of the Area Differentials pane to complete the procedure.

---

---

1. Enter or select criteria ID of the items you want to exclude.
2. Click **Add**. The information is added to the item exclusion table.
3. To remove an item from the item exclusion table:
  - a. Select an item.
  - b. Click **Remove**. The item is removed from the item exclusion table.

### Complete the Area Differential

1. Click **Apply**. Any changes are added to the table
2. Click **Done** to save your changes and close the window.

## Edit an Area Differential Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Pricing Strategy > Maintain Pricing Strategy. The Pricing Strategy Search workspace opens.

Figure 5–4 Pricing Strategy Search Workspace

The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Pricing Strategy' window with the 'Pricing Strategy Search' section. The search criteria are as follows:

- Price Strategy Id: [Empty]
- Type: Clearance
- Department: [Empty]
- Class: [Empty]
- Subclass: [Empty]
- Zone Group: [Empty]
- Zone: [Empty]
- Price Guide: [Empty]
- Calendar Status: - Select -
- Calendar: [Empty]
- New Calendar: [Empty]

Buttons: Clear, Search, Cancel

1. Enter criteria as needed to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. The results of your search are listed in the Pricing Strategies List.

Figure 5–5 Pricing Strategies List Window

The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Pricing Strategy' window with the 'Pricing Strategies List' window open. The table displays the following data:

Price Strategy	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone
945	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 New-Z1-I	
626	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_Et	
947	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_Et	
621	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_U	
941	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_U	
624	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 Z2-whole	
944	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 Z2-whole	
625	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 US Locat	
946	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 US Locat	
623	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST whole	
943	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST whole	
622	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST Store	
942	8888 PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST Store	
421	8000 Shoes					np zone2	725 546	
81	5002 RPM QA De...					ZG-AAA	562 Z3-Store	
141	5003 RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562 Z3-Store	
701	5003 RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562 Z4-Misc	
783	5000 RPM QA Dept					STZG-B	1643 Zone1	

Buttons: Delete, Edit, Cancel, Save + Repeat, Done

3. From the Pricing Strategies List, select the area differential strategy you want to maintain.
4. Click **Edit**, or double-click the strategy selected. A Strategy Maintenance editing pane opens, and the fields that can be changed are enabled.

**Figure 5–6 Strategy Maintenance Edit - Area Differential**

5. If you selected an area differential strategy, select the location you want to update.

### Remove a Zone From an Area Differential Strategy

1. Select the zone you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**. The zone is removed from the table

### Exclude Items From the Area Differential

---

**Note:** Expand the Item Exclusion section of the Area Differentials pane to complete the procedure.

---

1. Enter or select criteria ID of the items you want to exclude.
2. Click **Add**. The information is added to the item exclusion table.
3. To remove an item from the item exclusion table:
  - a. Select an item.
  - b. Click **Remove**. The item is removed from the item exclusion table.

### Complete the Area Differential

1. Click **Apply**. Any changes are added to the table
2. Click **Done** to save your changes and close the window.

## Clearance Pricing

A clearance pricing strategy allows you to define the method used to mark down items.

### Create a Clearance Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Create Price Strategy. The Create Pricing Strategy workspace opens with the Strategy Maintenance pane.

**Figure 5–7 Strategy Maintenance Pane**

The screenshot shows a window titled 'Create Pricing Strategy'. Inside, there is a pane titled 'Strategy Maintenance'. At the top of this pane, there is a 'Type' dropdown menu with 'Clearance' selected and a 'Next' button to its right. At the bottom right of the pane, there is a button labeled 'Define Strategy Details'.

1. In the Type field, select Clearance.
2. Click **Next**. Additional fields appear.

**Figure 5–8 Strategy Maintenance Details**

The screenshot shows the 'Strategy Maintenance' pane with additional fields. The 'Type' dropdown is still 'Clearance' and the 'Next' button is present. Below these are several input fields with LOV (List of Values) buttons (represented by a small grid icon):
 

- \* Department: [ ] + [ ]
- Class: [ ] + [ ]
- Subclass: [ ] + [ ]
- \* Zone Group: [ ] + [ ]
- Zone: [ ] + [ ]
- Price Guide: [ ] + [ ]
- Calendar: [ ] + [ ]
- Suspend:
- New Calendar: [ ] + [ ]

 The 'Define Strategy Details' button is at the bottom right.

3. Enter the ID of the merchandise level you want to apply the strategy to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level.

---

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above, if the definition of the department in the aggregation level dialog allows it.

---

4. Select the zones for the strategy:

- **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
5. In the Price Guides field, enter the ID of the Price Guide field, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

---

**Note:** Only price guides associated with the selected departments can be selected.

---

---

6. In the Calendar field, enter the ID of the calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.
7. In the Suspend field, select the check box to indicate that reviews of the existing strategy are stopped.

---

---

**Note:** Clear the check box to indicate the review periods should begin with the next review period.

---

---

8. In the New Calendar field, enter the ID of the calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.

---

---

**Note:** You must select the Suspend check box before you can add a new calendar.

---

---

9. Click **Define Strategy Details**. The Clearance Strategy Details pane opens.

### **Define Clearance Strategy Details**

1. In the Markdown Percent field, select the price from which the clearance price is calculated.
2. Click **Add Row**.
3. In the Discount Percent field, enter the percent of the markdown.
4. Click **Apply**.

---

---

**Note:** If the price from which the clearance price is calculated is Regular Retail, the Discount Percent fields must increase with each markdown added.

---

---

### **Edit a Clearance Pricing Strategy**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Maintain Price Strategy. The Pricing Strategy Search workspace opens.

**Figure 5–9 Pricing Strategy Search Workspace**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Maintain Pricing Strategy" with a sub-tab "Pricing Strategy Search". The interface contains several input fields and buttons:

- Price Strategy Id:** A text input field.
- Type:** A dropdown menu currently showing "Clearance", with a "+ Clear" button next to it.
- Department:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Class:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Subclass:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Zone Group:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Zone:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Price Guide:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Calendar Status:** A dropdown menu currently showing "- Select -".
- Calendar:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- New Calendar:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.

At the bottom right of the search area, there are "Clear" and "Search" buttons. At the bottom right of the entire window, there is a "Cancel" button.

1. Enter criteria as needed to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. The results of your search are listed in the Pricing Strategy Search List window.

**Figure 5–10 Pricing Strategy List Window**

Price Strategy	Department Id	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone
945	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	New-Z1-
626	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_ET
947	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_ET
621	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
941	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
624	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
944	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
625	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
946	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
623	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole
943	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole
622	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
942	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
421	8000	Shoes					np zone2	725	546
81	5002	RPM QA De...					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
141	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
701	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z4-Misc
783	5000	RPM QA Dept					STZG-B	1643	Zone1

3. From the Pricing Strategies List, select the clearance strategy you want to maintain.
4. Click **Edit**, or double-click the strategy selected. A second Strategy Maintenance pane opens and the fields that can be changed are enabled.

**Figure 5–11 Strategy Maintenance - Edit Clearance**

Type: Clearance [Next]

\* Department: 8888 [PS Department] \* Zone Group: 1 [All Locations]  
 Class: [ ] Zone: 444 [ST wholesaleA4]  
 Subclass: [ ]

Price Guide: [ ] Suspend: [ ]  
 Calendar: [ ] New Calendar: [ ]

Markdown Percent: Regular Price [ ]  
 Markdown Number: [ ]  
 Discount Percent: [ ] [Add Row] [Apply]

Markdown Number	Discount Percent
1	10%

[Edit] [Remove Markdown]

5. Make necessary changes.
6. Click **Apply**.

### Edit a Price Guide

Change or enter a price guide name, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate price guide if necessary.

### Change Calendars

---

**Note:** Before you can specify a new calendar, the existing calendar must be suspended

---

1. Select the Suspend check box.
2. Enter a calendar name, or click the LOV button and select a calendar

### Edit a Markdown

1. Select the Markdown number from the Clearance Strategies table.
2. Click **Edit**. The Discount Percent field is enabled.
3. Edit the discount percent.
4. Click **Apply**.

### Delete a Markdown

1. Select the highest Markdown number from the Clearance Strategies table.
2. Click **Remove Markdown**.
3. Click **Apply**.

## Clearance Defaults Pricing

A clearance defaults pricing strategy allows you to set up a strategy for generating subsequent markdowns after an initial clearance event.

### Create a Clearance Defaults Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Create Price Strategy. The Create Pricing Strategy workspace opens with the Strategy Maintenance pane.

**Figure 5–12 Strategy Maintenance Pane**



1. In the Type field, select Clearance Defaults.
2. Click **Next**. Additional Strategy fields appear.

**Figure 5–13 Strategy Maintenance - Clearance Defaults**

3. Enter the ID of the merchandise level you want to apply the strategy to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level.

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above, if the definition of the department in the aggregation level dialog allows it.

4. Click **Define Strategy Details**. The Clearance Defaults Strategy Details pane opens.

**Figure 5–14 Clearance Defaults Strategy Details Window**

Markdown Number	Discount Percent	Days after First

**Define Clearance Strategy Details**

1. Enter the percent of the first markdown after the initial markdown in the Discount Percent field.
2. Enter how many days after the first markdown that this markdown should be taken in the Days after First field.
3. Enter when to reset the price to regular price in the Reset Price this many days after out of stock date field.

4. Click **Apply**. A row is added to the table.

#### Add Subsequent Markdowns

1. Click **Add Row**.
2. Enter a percent in the Discount Percent field.

---

**Note:** Subsequent markdown percents must be greater than the previous.

---

3. Enter a number of days in the Days after First field.
4. Click **Apply**. The markdown is added to the table.

#### Edit a Clearance Defaults Price Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Maintain Price Strategy. The Pricing Strategy Search workspace opens.

**Figure 5–15 Pricing Strategy Search Window**

1. Enter criteria as needed to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. The results of your search are listed in the Pricing Strategies List.

**Figure 5–16 Pricing Strategies List Window**

Price Strategy	Department	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone
945	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 New-Z1-
626	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 MSOB_ET
947	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 MSOB_ET
621	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 MSOB_U
941	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 MSOB_U
624	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 Z2-whole
944	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 Z2-whole
625	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 US Locat
946	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 US Locat
623	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 ST whole
943	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 ST whole
622	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 ST Store
942	8888 PS Department...						All Locations		1 ST Store
421	8000 Shoes						np zone2		725 546
81	5002 RPM QA De...						ZG-AAA		562 Z3-Store
141	5003 RPM QA Dept						ZG-AAA		562 Z3-Store
701	5003 RPM QA Dept						ZG-AAA		562 Z4-Misc
783	5000 RPM QA Dept						STZG-B		1643 Zone1

- From the Pricing Strategies List, select the clearance defaults strategy you want to maintain.
- Click **Edit**, or double-click the strategy selected. A Strategy Maintenance pane opens and the fields that can be changed are enabled.

**Figure 5–17 Strategy Maintenance Clearance Defaults Window**

- Make necessary changes.

**Add Subsequent Markdowns**

- Select the row before which you want to add the markdown.
- Click **Add Row**.
- Enter a percent in the Discount Percent field.

---

**Note:** Subsequent markdown percents must be greater than the previous.

---

- Enter a number of days in the Days after First field.
- Click **Apply**. The markdown is added to the table.

**Edit a Markdown**

1. Select the Markdown number from the Clearance Strategies table.
2. Click **Edit**. The Discount Percent and Days after First fields are enabled.
3. Edit the discount percent and days after first values.
4. Click **Apply**.

**Delete a Markdown**

1. Select the highest Markdown number from the Clearance Strategies table.
2. Click **Remove Markdown**.
3. Click **Apply**.

**Competitive Pricing**

A competitive pricing strategy allows you to define your pricing strategy for items based on your primary competitor's prices.

Note that all locations in a competitive pricing strategy must use the same currency.

You can also assign reference competitors to a competitive pricing strategy. This information allows you to compare the proposed prices to the prices available from other retailers. If the proposed prices vary from the target percentages defined for the reference competitors, you are prompted by the system, so that you can adjust the price in the pricing worksheet.

**Create a Competitive Pricing Strategy**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Create Price Strategy. The Create Pricing Strategy workspace opens with the Strategy Maintenance pane.

**Figure 5–18 Strategy Maintenance Pane**



1. In the Type field, select Competitive.
2. Click **Next**. Additional strategy fields appear.

**Figure 5–19 Strategy Maintenance - Competitive**

3. Enter the ID of the merchandise level you want to apply the strategy to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level.

---

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above, if the definition of the department in the aggregation level dialog allows it.

---

4. Select the zones for the strategy:
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
5. In the Price Guides field, enter the ID of the Price Guide field, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

**Note:** Only price guides associated with the selected departments can be selected.

---

6. In the Calendar field, enter the ID of the calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.
7. In the Suspend field, select the check box to indicate that reviews of the existing strategy are stopped.

---

**Note:** Clear the check box to indicate the review periods should begin with the next review period.

---

8. In the New Calendar field, enter the ID of the new calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.

---

**Note:** You must select the Suspend check box before you can add a new calendar.

---

- Click **Define Strategy Details**. The Competitive Strategy Details pane opens.

**Figure 5–20 Competitive Strategy Details Window**

	Competitor	Competitor Store	Compete Type	Percent
* Competitor	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
* Competitor Store	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
Compete Type	Match			
<b>Reference Competitors</b>				
	Competitor	Competitor Store	Compete Type	Percent
A	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Match	<input type="text"/>
B	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Match	<input type="text"/>
C	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Match	<input type="text"/>
D	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Match	<input type="text"/>
E	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Match	<input type="text"/>

### Define Competitive Strategy Details

- In the Competitor field, enter the ID of the primary competitor or click the LOV button and select a competitor.
- In the Competitor Store field, enter the ID of the store that proposed retails are being compared against.

---

**Note:** The currency at the competitor store must be the same as the zones previously selected.

---

- In the Compete Type, select how the price strategy determines the prices:
  - Match:** Prices are proposed to be the same as the primary competitor's prices.
  - Price Above:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage above the primary competitor's prices.
  - Price Below:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage below the primary competitor's prices.
  - Price by Code:** Prices are proposed by the market basket code for the merchandise hierarchy/zone.

### Define Match Strategy Details

- Define reference competitors as necessary.
- Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Price Above or Price Below Strategy Details

1. In the Compete Percent field, enter the percent above or below the primary competitor's price that the new price is set at.
2. Set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a retail price can vary from a primary competitor before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.
3. Define reference competitors as necessary.
4. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Price by Code Strategy Details

1. In the Code field, select the competitive market basket code you want to use to set the price.
2. In the Compete Type, select how the price strategy determines the prices:
  - **Match:** Prices are proposed to be the same as the primary competitor's prices.
  - **Price Above:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage above the primary competitor's prices.
  - **Price Below:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage below the primary competitor's prices.
3. In the Compete Percent field, enter the percent above or below the primary competitor's price that the new price is set at.
4. Set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a retail price can vary from a primary competitor before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.
5. Define reference competitors as necessary.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Reference Competitors

1. In the Reference Competitors section, enter the ID of the competitor in the Competitor field, or click the LOV button and select a competitor.
2. In the Competitor Store field, enter the ID of the store, or click the LOV button and select a store.
3. In the Compete Type, select how to compare prices to the reference competitors:

- **Match:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price matches the referenced competitors price.
  - **Price Above:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price is at least the specified percent above the referenced competitor's price.
  - **Price Below:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price is at least the specified percent below the referenced competitor's price.
4. If you selected Price Above or Price Below, enter the percent above or below the competitor's price that the new price is compared.
  5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Create a Competitive Pricing Strategy Associated with an Area Differential

---



---

**Note:** Expand the Competitor section of the Area Differentials pane to complete the procedure.

---



---

1. In the Competitor field, enter the ID of the competitor or click the LOV button and select a competitor.
2. In the Competitor Store field, enter the ID of the store that proposed retails are being compared against or click the LOV button and select a store.

---



---

**Note:** The currency at the competitor store must be the same as the zones previously selected.

---



---

3. In the Compete Type, select how the price strategy determines the prices:
  - **Match:** Prices are proposed to be the same as the competitor's prices.
  - **Price Above:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage above the competitor's prices.
  - **Price Below:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage below the competitor's prices.
  - **Price by Code:** Prices are proposed by the market basket code for the merchandise hierarchy/zone.

### Define Match Strategy Details

1. Define reference competitors as necessary.
2. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Price Above or Price Below Strategy Details

1. In the Compete Percent field, enter the percent above or below the competitor's price that the new price is set at.
2. Set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a retail price can vary from a competitor before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.
3. Define reference competitors as necessary.
4. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Price by Code Strategy Details

1. In the Code field, select the competitive market basket code you want to use to set the price.
2. In the Compete Type, select how the price strategy determines the prices:
  - **Match:** Prices are proposed to be the same as the competitor's prices.
  - **Price Above:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage above the competitor's prices.
  - **Price Below:** Prices are proposed to be a percentage below the competitor's prices.
3. In the Compete Percent field, enter the percent above or below the competitor's price that the new price is set at.
4. Set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a retail price can vary from a competitor before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.
5. Define reference competitors as necessary.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Reference Competitors

---



---

**Note:** Expand the Reference Competitor section of the Area Differentials pane to complete the procedure.

---



---

1. In the Reference Competitors section, enter the ID of the competitor in the Competitor field, or click the LOV button and select a competitor.
2. In the Competitor Store field, enter the ID of the store, or click the LOV button and select a store.
3. In the Compete Type, select how to compare prices to the reference competitors:
  - **Match:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price matches the referenced competitors price.

- **Price Above:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price is at least the specified percent above the referenced competitor's price.
  - **Price Below:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price is at least the specified percent below the referenced competitor's price.
4. If you selected Price Above or Price Below, enter the percent above or below the competitor's price that the new price is compared.
  5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Edit a Competitive Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Maintain Price Strategy. The Pricing Strategy Search workspace opens.

**Figure 5–21 Pricing Strategy Search Workspace**

1. Enter criteria as needed to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. The results of your search are listed in the Pricing Strategies List.

**Figure 5–22 Pricing Strategies List Window**

Price Strategy	Department Id	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone
945	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	New-Z1-
626	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_ET
947	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_ET
621	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
941	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
624	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
944	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
625	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
946	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
623	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole
943	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole
622	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
942	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
421	8000	Shoes					np zone2	725	546
81	5002	RPM QA De...					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
141	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
701	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z4-Misc
783	5000	RPM QA Dept					STZG-B	1643	Zone1

- From the Pricing Strategies List, select the competitive strategy you want to maintain.
- Click **Edit**, or double-click the strategy selected. A second Strategy Maintenance pane opens and the fields that can be changed are enabled.

**Figure 5–23 Strategy Maintenance Competitive Window**

Type: Competitive [Next]

\* Department: [ ] [ ] + [ ]      \* Zone Group: [ ] [ ] + [ ]

Class: [ ] [ ] + [ ]      Zone: [ ] [ ] + [ ]

Subclass: [ ] [ ] + [ ]

Price Guide: [ ] [ ] + [ ]      Suspend: [ ]

Calendar: [ ] [ ] + [ ]      New Calendar: [ ] [ ] + [ ]

[Define Strategy Details]

- Make necessary changes.

### Edit a Price Guide

To edit a price guide:

- Enter the price guide name, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate price guide.

### Change Calendars

---



---

**Note:** In order to specify a new calendar, the existing calendar must be suspended.

---



---

1. Select the Suspend checkbox.
2. Enter a calendar name, or click the LOV button and select a calendar

### Edit a Competitor

1. In the Competitor field, enter or change the competitor ID, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate competitor.
2. In the Competitor Store field, enter a competitor store ID, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate store.
3. In the Compete Type drop-down field, select the compete type.
4. For Price Above and Price Below compete types, set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a retail price can vary from a competitor before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.

### Edit Reference Competitors

Define reference competitors as necessary.

### Complete the Competitive Price Strategy

1. Click **Save + Repeat** to commit your changes.
2. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

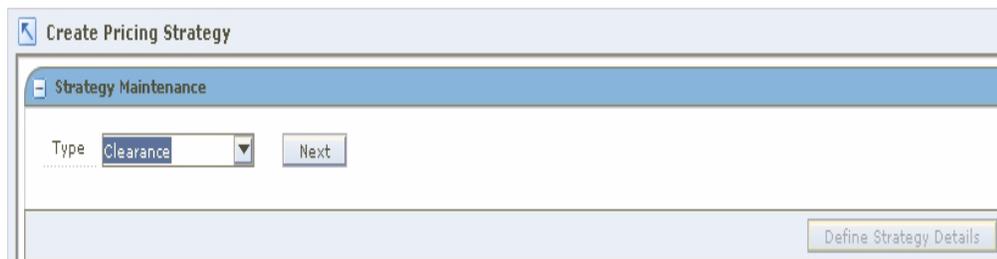
## Margin Pricing

A margin pricing strategy allows you to define the pricing strategy for items based on margin targets.

### Create a Margin Pricing Strategy

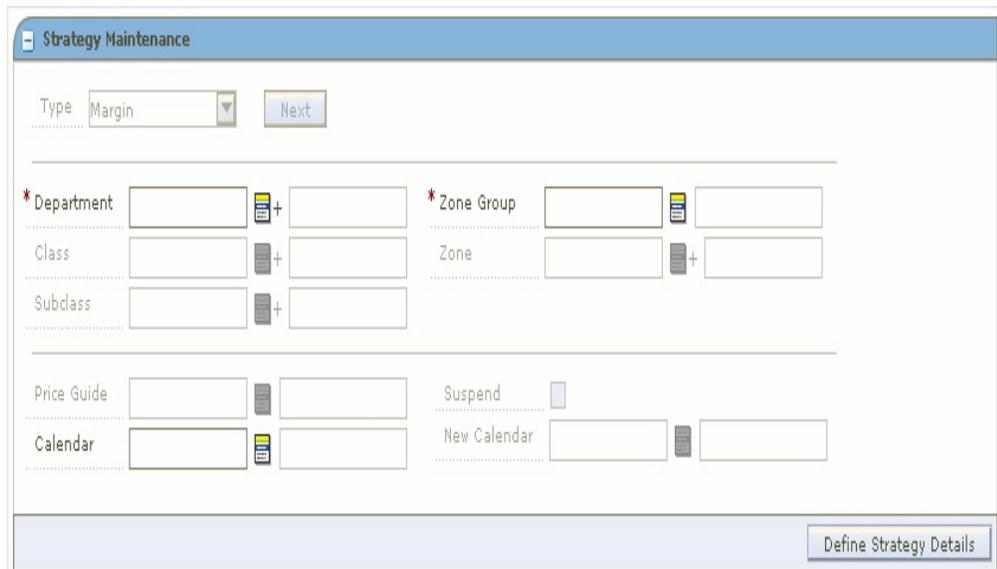
**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Create Price Strategy. The Create Pricing Strategy workspace opens with the Strategy Maintenance pane.

**Figure 5–24 Strategy Maintenance Pane**



1. In the Type field, select Margin.
2. Click Next. Additional strategy fields appear.

**Figure 5–25 Strategy Maintenance Margin**



3. Enter the ID of the merchandise level you want to apply the strategy to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level.

---

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above, if the definition of the department in the aggregation level dialog allows it.

---

4. Select the zones for the strategy:
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
5. In the Price Guides field, enter the ID of the Price Guide field, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---



---

**Note:** Only price guides associated with the selected departments can be selected.

---



---

6. In the Calendar field, enter the ID of the calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.
7. In the Suspend field, select the check box to indicate that reviews of the existing strategy are stopped.

---



---

**Note:** Clear the check box to indicate the review periods should begin in the next period.

---



---

8. In the New Calendar field, enter the ID of the calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.

---



---

**Note:** You must select the Suspend check box before you can add a new calendar.

---



---

9. Click **Define Strategy Details**. The Margin Strategy Details pane opens.

**Figure 5–26** *Margin Strategy Details*

Margin Strategy Details 			
Code	Margin Target	Acceptable Range From	Acceptable Range To

### Define Margin Strategy Details

1. In the Code field, select the margin market basket code you want to use to set the price.
2. In the Margin Target field, enter the percent of margin you want to earn on the item/zone.
3. Set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a margin can vary from the target before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.
4. Click **Apply**. An entry is added to the Margin Strategy Details table.
5. Define reference competitors as necessary.

- Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Edit a Margin Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Maintain Price Strategy. The Pricing Strategy Search workspace opens.

**Figure 5–27 Pricing Strategy Search Window**

The screenshot shows a window titled "Maintain Pricing Strategy" with a sub-tab "Pricing Strategy Search". The form contains the following fields and controls:

- Price Strategy Id:** A text input field.
- Type:** A dropdown menu currently showing "Clearance", with a "+ Clear" button next to it.
- Department:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Class:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Subclass:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Zone Group:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Zone:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Price Guide:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- Calendar Status:** A dropdown menu currently showing "- Select -".
- Calendar:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.
- New Calendar:** A text input field with a "+ Add" button.

At the bottom right of the form area, there are two buttons: "Clear" and "Search". A "Cancel" button is located at the bottom right of the entire window.

- Enter criteria as needed to limit your search.
- Click **Search**. The results of your search are listed in the Pricing Strategies List.

**Figure 5–28 Pricing Strategies List Window**

Price Strategy	Department Id	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone
945	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 New-Z1-	
626	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_ET	
947	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_ET	
621	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_U	
941	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 MSOB_U	
624	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 Z2-whole	
944	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 Z2-whole	
625	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 US Locat	
946	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 US Locat	
623	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST whole	
943	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST whole	
622	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST Store	
942	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1 ST Store	
421	8000	Shoes					np zone2	725 546	
81	5002	RPM QA De...					ZG-AAA	562 Z3-Store	
141	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562 Z3-Store	
701	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562 Z4-Misc	
783	5000	RPM QA Dept					STZG-B	1643 Zone1	

- From the Pricing Strategies List, select the margin strategy you want to maintain.
- Click **Edit**, or double-click the strategy selected. A Strategy Maintenance pane opens and the fields that can be changed are enabled.

**Figure 5–29 Strategy Maintenance Margin Window**

- Make necessary changes.

### Edit a Price Guide

To edit a price guide:

- Enter the price guide name, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate price guide.

## Change Calendars

---

---

**Note:** Before you can specify a new calendar, the existing calendar must be suspended.

---

---

1. Select the Suspend check box.
2. Enter a calendar name, or click the LOV button and select a calendar

## Edit Margin Details

1. Select a row in the Margin Strategy Details table.
2. In the Margin Target field, enter the percent of margin you want to earn on the item/zone.

---

---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a margin can vary from the target before a price change is proposed.

---

---

3. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
4. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the bottom of the range.
5. Click **Apply**.

## Delete Margin Details

1. Select the margin detail from the Margin Strategy Details table.
2. Click **Delete**. The row is removed from the table.

## Edit Reference Competitors

Define reference competitors as necessary.

## Complete the Margin Price Strategy

1. Click **Save + Repeat** to commit your changes.
2. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Maintain Margin Pricing

The maintain margin pricing strategy allows you to define the pricing strategy for items based on future cost changes. The proposed retails can be based on current or market basket margin percentages. Reference competitors may be assigned for comparison purposes.

### Create a Maintain Margin Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Create Price Strategy. The Create Pricing Strategy workspace opens with the Strategy Maintenance pane.

**Figure 5–30 Strategy Maintenance Pane**

The screenshot shows a software interface titled 'Create Pricing Strategy'. Inside, there is a sub-pane titled 'Strategy Maintenance'. Within this pane, there is a 'Type' field with a dropdown menu currently showing 'Clearance'. To the right of this field is a 'Next' button. At the bottom right of the 'Strategy Maintenance' pane, there is a button labeled 'Define Strategy Details'.

1. In the Type field, select Maintain Margin.
2. Click **Next**. Additional strategy fields appear.
3. Enter the ID of the merchandise level you want to apply the strategy to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level.

---

**Note:** You must enter a department. Subsequent merchandise levels are enabled as you add the level above, if the definition of the department in the aggregation level dialog allows it.

---

4. Select the zones for the strategy:
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the price strategy, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
5. In the Price Guides field, enter the ID of the Price Guide field, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

**Note:** Only price guides associated with the selected departments can be selected.

---

6. In the Calendar field, enter the ID of the calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.
7. In the Suspend field, select the check box to indicate that reviews of the existing strategy are stopped.

---

**Note:** Clear the check box to indicate the review periods should begin in the next period.

---

8. In the New Calendar field, enter the ID of the calendar you want to associate with the strategy, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.

---

**Note:** You must select the Suspend check box before you can add a new calendar.

---

9. Click **Define Strategy Details**. The Maintain Margin Strategy Details pane opens.

**Figure 5–31 Maintain Margin Strategy Details Window**

**Define Maintain Margin Strategy Details**

1. Select the Auto Approve check box to indicate price changes should be created in Approved status.
2. In the Cost Change Forward Days, enter the number of days into the next review period that the strategy will consider cost changes when proposing price changes.

---

**Note:** Cost Change Forward Days should not exceed the length of a review period.

---

3. Select the method for the strategy:
  - **Market Basket Margin:** Select to have the margin for the item's market basket applied to the item's new cost. A new Margin Strategy Details area appears.

**Figure 5–32 Margin Strategy Details Window**

- **Current Margin:** Select to have the current margin applied to the item's new cost. The current margin fields are enabled.

**Define Market Basket Margin**

1. In the Code drop-down field, select the margin market basket code you want to use to set the price.
2. In the Margin Target field, enter the percent of margin you want to earn on the item/zone.
3. Set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a margin can vary from the target before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.
4. Click **Apply**. An entry is added to the Maintain Strategy Details table.
5. Define reference competitors as necessary.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Current Margin

1. Select how the strategy will apply an increase in margin to a proposed retail:
  - **Margin %:** Select to have the percent of the cost change added to the basis retail to determine the proposed retail.
  - **Change by Cost Change Amount:** Select to have the amount of the cost change added to the basis retail.
2. Select how the strategy will apply a decrease in margin to a proposed retail:
  - **Margin %:** Select to have the percent of the cost change subtracted from the basis retail to determine the proposed retail.
  - **Change by Cost Change Amount:** Select to have the amount of the cost change subtracted from the basis retail.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Define Reference Competitors

1. In the Reference Competitors section, enter the ID of the competitor in the Competitor field, or click the LOV button and select a competitor.
2. In the Competitor Store field, enter the ID of the store, or click the LOV button and select a store.
3. In the Compete Type, select how to compare prices to the reference competitors:
  - **Match:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price matches the referenced competitors price.
  - **Price Above:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price is at least the specified percent above the referenced competitor's price.
  - **Price Below:** A pass or fail indicator appears on the worksheet depending on if the proposed price is at least the specified percent below the referenced competitor's price.
4. If you selected Price Above or Price Below, enter the percent above or below the competitor's price that the new price is compared.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Edit a Maintain Margin Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Strategy > Maintain Price Strategy. The Pricing Strategy Search workspace opens.

**Figure 5–33 Pricing Strategy Search Window**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Maintain Pricing Strategy" with a sub-section "Pricing Strategy Search". The search criteria are as follows:

- Price Strategy Id:
- Type:  +
- Department:  +
- Class:  +
- Subclass:  +
- Zone Group:  +
- Zone:  +
- Price Guide:  +
- Calendar Status:
- Calendar:  +
- New Calendar:  +

Buttons: "Clear" and "Search" are located at the bottom right of the search area. A "Cancel" button is located at the bottom right of the entire window.

1. Enter criteria as needed to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. The results of your search are listed in the Pricing Strategies List.

Figure 5-34 Pricing strategies List Window

Price Strategy	Department Id	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone
945	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	New-Z1-l
626	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_El
947	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_El
621	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
941	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
624	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
944	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
625	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
946	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
623	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole:
943	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole:
622	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
942	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
421	8000	Shoes					np zone2	725	546
81	5002	RPM QA De...					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
141	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
701	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z4-Misc
783	5000	RPM QA Dept					STZG-B	1643	Zone1

- From the Pricing Strategies List, select the maintain margin strategy you want to maintain.
- Click **Edit**, or double-click the strategy selected. Another Strategy Maintenance pane opens and the fields that can be changed are enabled.

Figure 5-35 Strategy Maintenance Maintain Margin

Type: Maintain Margin Next

\* Department:

Class:

Subclass:

\* Zone Group:

Zone:

Price Guide:

Calendar:

Suspend:

New Calendar:

Define Strategy Details

5. Make necessary changes.

### Edit a Price Guide

To edit a price guide:

- Enter the price guide name, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate price guide.

### Change Calendars

---



---

**Note:** Before you can specify a new calendar, the existing calendar must be suspended.

---



---

1. Select the Suspend check box.
2. Enter a calendar name, or click the LOV button and select a calendar.

### Edit Maintain Margin Details

1. Select the Auto Approve check box to indicate price changes should be created in Approved status.
2. In the Cost Change Forward Days, enter the number of days into the next review period that the strategy will consider cost changes when proposing price changes.

---



---

**Note:** Cost Change Forward Days should not exceed the length of a review period.

---



---

3. Select the method for the strategy:
  - **Market Basket Margin:** Select to have the margin for the item's market basket applied to the item's new cost. A new Margin Strategy Details area appears.

**Figure 5–36** Margin Strategy Details Window

Margin Strategy Details 			
Code	Margin Target	Acceptable Range From	Acceptable Range To

- **Current Margin:** Select to have the current margin applied to the item's new cost.

### Edit Market Basket Margin

1. In the Code drop-down field, select the margin market basket code you want to use to set the price.

2. In the Margin Target field, enter the percent of margin you want to earn on the item/zone.
3. Set up the acceptable range:

---



---

**Note:** Acceptable range is the amount by percentage that a margin can vary from the target before a price change is proposed.

---



---

- a. In the Acceptable Range From field, enter the bottom of the range.
- b. In the Acceptable Range To field, enter the top of the range.
4. Click **Apply**. An entry is added to the Maintain Strategy Details table.
5. Define reference competitors as necessary.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Edit Current Margin

1. Select how the strategy will apply an increase in margin to a proposed retail:
  - **Margin %:** Select to have the percent of the cost change added to the basis retail to determine the proposed retail.
  - **Change by Cost Change Amount:** Select to have the amount of the cost change added to the basis retail.
2. Select how the strategy will apply a decrease in margin to a proposed retail:
  - **Margin %:** Select to have the percent of the cost change subtracted from the basis retail to determine the proposed retail.
  - **Change by Cost Change Amount:** Select to have the amount of the cost change subtracted from the basis retail.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Edit Reference Competitors

Define reference competitors as necessary.

### Complete the Margin Price Strategy

1. Click **Save + Repeat** to commit your changes.
2. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Delete a Pricing Strategy

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Pricing Strategy > Maintain Pricing Strategy. The Pricing Strategy Search workspace opens.

**Figure 5–37 Pricing Strategy Search Window**

1. Enter criteria as needed to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. The search results are listed in the Pricing Strategies List.

Figure 5–38 Pricing Strategies List Window

Price Strategy	Department Id	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone
945	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	New-Z1-I
626	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_ET
947	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_ET
621	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
941	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	MSOB_U
624	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
944	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	Z2-whole
625	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
946	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	US Locat
623	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole
943	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST whole
622	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
942	8888	PS Departm...					All Locations	1	ST Store
421	8000	Shoes					np zone2	725	546
81	5002	RPM QA De...					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
141	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z3-Store
701	5003	RPM QA Dept					ZG-AAA	562	Z4-Misc
783	5000	RPM QA Dept					STZG-B	1643	Zone1

3. From the list, select the price strategy you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
5. Click **Yes**.
6. Click **Done** to close the window.



---

---

## Worksheets

RPM uses strategies, calendars, and item/location information to automatically generate worksheets. The Worksheet functionality allows you to maintain the proposed price changes automatically generated by RPM.

The worksheet may contain many different columns.

### Worksheet Detail

The Worksheet Detail workspace allows you to:

- Review the auto generated price change proposals.
- Review items that met rules or were exceptions.
- Make clearance decisions.
- Delete the Pricing Worksheet if no price changes need to be made.
- Examine the information about price change proposals and make decisions about which items to change and what retail prices to set.
- Modify column values.
- Perform what-if analysis on the Worksheet to help you make the best pricing decisions.
- Export the worksheet to a Comma Separated Value (csv) file that can be opened in other applications such as spreadsheets and work processors.

### Worksheet Columns

The worksheet may contain many different columns. See the descriptions and calculations for each column below.

**Table 6–1 Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations**

Column	Description	Editable	Calculation
% off Regular Retail	The percent difference between the basis regular retail and the new retail of the item.	No	Price Change Amount divided by Basis Regular Retail (Before VAT)  Depending on your aggregation level settings:  Price Change Amount = Current Retail - New Retail  Price Change Amount = New Retail - Current Retail  The zone level regular retail is used if it exists.
% off Basis Retail	The percent difference between the basis retail (regular or clearance) and the new retail of the item.  This value is the same as % off Regular Retail if there is no clearance retail.	No	Price Change Amount divided by Basis Retail (Before VAT)  Price Change Amount equals the difference between the New Retail and the Clearance or Regular Retail  Depending on your aggregation level settings:  Price Change Amount = Current Retail - New Retail  Price Change Amount = New Retail - Current Retail  The zone level clearance retail is used if it exists.
Base Cost	The base cost of the item on the effective date (including price change processing days).	No	When the record is at a zone level, the zone level base cost is used in the calculation if one exists.
Basis Cost	The pricing cost of the item on the effective date (including price change processing days).	No	When the record is at a zone level, the zone level basis cost is used in the calculation if one exists.
Class ID	The class hierarchy ID of the item's class.	No	
Class Description	The name of the class.	No	
Clearance Indicator	Checked and disabled if the item is on active clearance. Unchecked if the item is not on clearance.	Yes	
Clearance	Hyperlink that opens a window with details on approved clearances. "Pending" appears if the item is on a pending clearance.	No	
Competitor A Alert	"Pass" appears if there is a competitor A and the strategy rules is met. "Fail" appears if the strategy rule is not met.	No	
Competitor A Retail	Competitor A's retail price.	No	
Competitor B Alert	"Pass" appears if there is a competitor B and the strategy rules is met. "Fail" appears if the strategy rule is not met.	No	
Competitor B Retail	Competitor B's retail price.	No	

**Table 6-1 (Cont.) Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations**

<b>Column</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Editable</b>	<b>Calculation</b>
Competitor C Alert	"Pass" appears if there is a competitor C and the strategy rules is met. "Fail" appears if the strategy rule is not met.	No	
Competitor C Retail	Competitor C's retail price.	No	
Competitor D Alert	"Pass" appears if there is a competitor D and the strategy rules is met. "Fail" appears if the strategy rule is not met.	No	
Competitor D Retail	Competitor D's retail price.	No	
Competitor E Alert	"Pass" appears if there is a competitor E and the strategy rules is met. "Fail" appears if the strategy rule is not met.	No	
Competitor E Retail	Competitor E's retail price.	No	
Conflict	An exclamation point appears if conflicts were found during conflict checking.	No	When conflict checking is run again or the price change is taken or not taken, the column is reset.
Cost Changes During Review Period	"Yes" appears if there are approved cost changes that have an effective date during the review period of the worksheet.	No	
Current Clearance Retail	The clearance retail for today if the item is on clearance.	No	The zone level clearance retail appears if it exists.
Current Clearance Retail UOM	The unit of measure for the item clearance price.	No	
Basis Retail	The active retail (regular or clearance) on the effective date before the current price change.	No	The zone level basis retail appears if it exists.
Basis Retail UOM	The unit of measure for the item basis retail.	No	
Basis Retail Multi-units	The active multi-unit retail on the effective date before the current price change.	No	The zone level multi-unit retail appears if it exists.
Basis Multi-unit Retail	The active multi-unit retail on the effective date before the current price change.	No	
Basis Multi-unit Retail UOM	The unit of measure for the active multi-unit retail on the effective date before the current price change.	No	
Current Cost	The pricing cost today.	No	
Current Cost Markup %	The cost markup of the item based on current cost and current retail.	No	Current Retail (regular or clearance, before VAT) minus Current Cost divided by Current Cost.  The zone level current cost is used if it exists.
Current Retail Markup %	The retail markup of the item based on current cost and current retail.	No	Current Retail (regular or clearance, before VAT) minus Current cost divided by Current Retail.  The zone level current cost is used if it exists.

**Table 6–1 (Cont.) Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations**

<b>Column</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Editable</b>	<b>Calculation</b>
Current Multi-Units	The unit value of the multi-unit retail price. For example: "2 ea." if there is a 2 for \$5 multi-unit retail.	No	The primary zone current multi-units will appear if it exists.
Current Multi-units Retail	The retail value of the multi-unit retail price. For example: "\$5.00" if there is a 2 for \$5 multi-unit retail.	No	
Current Multi-units UOM	The unit of measure for the item multi-unit.	No	
Current Regular Retail	The item's regular retail value today.	No	The zone level current retail appears if it exists.
Current Retail UOM	The selling unit of measure for the current retail.	No	
Current Retail/UOM	The regular retail value per unit of measure in the package today. For example: ".05/oz" if there is a 16 oz. can of soup that retails for .89.	No	Current Retail divided by Package UOM
Diff One	The differentiator 1 value for a transaction level item.	No	
Diff Two	The differentiator 2 value for a transaction level item.	No	
Diff Three	The differentiator 3 value for a transaction level item.	No	
Diff Four	The differentiator 4 value for a transaction level item.	No	
Effective Date	The date that price change goes into effect.	Yes	End of Review Period plus Price Change Processing Days
New Item Location Ind	An indicator appears if the item/location is a new combination in RPM.	No	
First Received Date	The date this item was first received into the location.	No	
Historical Sales	The monetary historical sales of the item based on the locations in the row.	No	The weekly, monthly, half-yearly, or yearly historical sales depending on aggregation level setting.
Historical Sales Units	The retail sales of the item for the current period.	No	The weekly, monthly, half-yearly, or yearly historical sales depending on aggregation level setting.
Item Description	The name of the item.	No	
Item ID	The transaction or parent item ID.	No	
Last Cost Change	The date of the last cost change. Note: Place the cursor over this field to show the average or highest cost of the item over the locations in the zone	No	

Table 6-1 (Cont.) Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations

Column	Description	Editable	Calculation
Last Price Change	The date of last price change. Note: Place the cursor over this field to show the items zone price.	No	
Last Received Date	The date the item was last received into the location.	No	
Link Code	The link code assigned to the transaction level item. A hyperlink opens a link code information window.	No	
Proposed Retail Markdown #	The markdown number if there is a proposed clearance price change.	No	
Margin Market Basket Code	The market basket code for transaction level items if one exists.	No	
Cost Markup %. On New Retail	The cost markup of the item based on new cost and new retail.	No	New Retail minus Basis Cost divided by Basis Cost The zone level basis cost is used if it exists.
New Multi-Units	The unit value of the new multi-unit retail price. For example: "2 ea." if there is a 2 for \$5 multi-unit retail.	Yes	
New Multi-units Retail	The retail value of the new multi-unit retail price. For example: "\$5.00" if there is a 2 for \$5 multi-unit retail.	Yes	
New Multi-units UOM	The unit of measure of the new item multi-unit. For example: ea. if there is a 2 for \$5 multi-unit retail.	Yes	
New Retail	The new proposed retail value for the effective date. Edit this field to override the proposed price.	Yes	
New Retail/UOM	The new retail value per unit of measure. For example: ".05/oz" if there is a 16 oz. can of soup that retails for .89	No	New Retail divided by the Unit Of Measure.
New Retail Markup %.	The percent retail sales margin of the item based on the new retail.	No	New Retail minus New Cost divided by New Retail (Before VAT) The zone level basis cost if used if it exists.
New Retail UOM	The unit of measure for the item's new retail. If you enter a new retail, New Retail UOM is required.	Yes	
Original Retail	The original retail of the item.	No	

**Table 6–1 (Cont.) Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations**

<b>Column</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Editable</b>	<b>Calculation</b>
Out of Stock Date	The out of stock day for clearance price changes. You can change this field.	Yes	Default Out of Stock Days after the effective date
Package Size	The package size of the item.	No	
Package UOM	The package unit of measure of the item.	No	
Parent ID	The parent item ID if the worksheet is at transaction item level and the item has a parent.	No	
Parent Item Description	The name of the parent item.	No	
Pending Cost Changes	The date of the earliest pending cost change for the item for the primary supplier. A hyperlink opens a link to a window with more information.	No	
Price Change Amount	The monetary value of the price change for one unit of that item.	No	New Retail minus Basis Retail at the location  Depending on your aggregation level settings:  Price Change Amount = Basis Retail - New Retail  Price Change Amount = New Retail - Current Basis  The zone level basis retail is used if it exists.
Price Change Indicator	Select "Take" to accept the proposed price change for the transaction level item and lock the row for editing.  Select "Don't Take" to reject the proposed price change and lock the row for editing.	Yes	
Price Changes	A hyperlink "NONE" if no price changes exist during review period.  A hyperlink "Pending" if price changes exist during review period. Click the hyperlink to view pending price change records.  Note: During the review period means between today's date and the end of the review period.	No	
Primary Competitor Alert	"Pass" appears if there is a primary competitor and the strategy rules is met. "Fail" appears if the strategy rule is not met.	No	
Primary Competitor Retail Changed Ind	"Yes" when a new or updated competitor retail is brought into RPM.  Note: If more than one strategy uses the same competitor, "Yes" will only appear in the worksheet for the first strategy to find it.	No	

**Table 6-1 (Cont.) Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations**

<b>Column</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Editable</b>	<b>Calculation</b>
Primary Competitor Retail	The primary competitors retail.	No	
Primary Competitor Retail UOM.	The items selling unit of measure for the primary competitor.	No	
Primary Competitor Multi-Units	The unit value of the multi-unit retail price on the most recent shop date. For example: "2" if there is a 2 for \$5 multi-unit retail	No	
Primary Competitor Multi-Unit Retail	The primary competitors multi-unit retail with the number of units on the most recent shop date. For example: 2 for \$5	No	
Primary Competitor Multi-units UOM.	The items unit of measure for the multi-unit price on the most recent shop date.	No	
Primary Supplier	The primary supplier ID for the item. Note: Place the cursor over this field to view the supplier name.	No	
Promotions	Hyperlink that opens a window with details on approved current or pending (after the effective date of the current price change) promotions.	No	
Proposed Cost Markup %.	The cost markup of the item based on proposed retail and basis cost.	No	Proposed Retail minus Basis Cost divided by Basis Cost. The zone level basis cost is used if it exists.
Proposed Retail	The retail on the proposed effective date.	No	Proposed Effective Date plus Price Prior Create Days
Proposed Retail/UOM	The proposed retail per unit of measure in the package. For example: ".05/oz" if there is a 16 oz. can of soup that retails for .89	No	Proposed Retail divided by Package UOM
Proposed Retail UOM	The unit of measure for the item's proposed retail.	No	
Proposed Retail Markup %	The retail sales margin of the item based on the new retail.	No	Proposed Retail minus Basis Cost divided by Proposed Retail (Before VAT) The zone level basis cost if used if it exists. For zone level records, if a zone level basis cost exists, use that value in the calculation
Replenishment Indicator	"Yes" if the item is on an active replenishment record.	No	
Reset Date	The reset date for the item. Enter a date to change the default.	Yes	Defaults to Out of Stock Date plus one day
Retail Label Type	The retail label type of the item.	No	
Retail Label Value	The retail label value of the item.	No	

**Table 6–1 (Cont.) Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations**

<b>Column</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Editable</b>	<b>Calculation</b>
Price Zone Group ID	The price zone group ID for a zone level item.  Note: Place the cursor over this field to view the price zone group description.	No	
Price Zone ID	The price zone ID for a zone level item.  Note: The price zone description is available as a mouse over.	No	
Rule	Binocular icon appears if the item meets rules.  Click the icon to open a window and view details of the rules met by the record.	No	
Projected Sales Units	The smoothed average regular price sales based on the number of weeks of sales that have occurred.	No	Total Sales divided by Total Weeks of Sales
Sales Change Amount	The difference between the items new retail and the basis retail on the effective date multiplied by the projected sales for a week.	No	Depending on your aggregation level settings:  Sales Change Amount = Basis Retail - New Retail  Sales Change Amount = New Retail - Current Basis  On Worksheet Status the sum of all individual records. On Worksheet Detail per item.
Seasonal Sell Thru %	The sell through percent for the current season. Total sales for the stores in the zone or location divided by stock on hand for the zone/location.	No	Total Sales For the Season divided by Stock On Hand  Depending on your aggregation level settings Warehouse Stock On Hand will be included or excluded.
Season/Phase	Hyperlink opens Season/Phase detail window.	No	
Sell Thru %	The sell through percent for store locations in the zone.	No	Sales divided by (Stock On Hand plus Sales)  Depending on your aggregation level settings Warehouse Stock On Hand will be included or excluded.  The type of sales and the amount of time to be considered is determined by the Sales Calculation Method.
State	The status of the details of the record.	No	
Store On Hand	The current stock on hand at store locations.	No	
Store On Order	The total on order qty for all stores in the price zone.  Note: On order is in the single unit size of the item, not case size.	No	
Store total inventory	Total inventory for all stores in the zone.	No	Store On Hand plus Store On Order plus Store In_Transit + Store OBNP_INV

**Table 6–1 (Cont.) Worksheet Column Descriptions and Calculations**

Column	Description	Editable	Calculation
Subclass ID	The subclass hierarchy ID of the item's subclass.  Note: Place the cursor over the field to view the subclass description.	No	
UDA	Hyperlink opens UDA information for the item if it exists.	No	
VPN	The VPN for the primary supplier of the item.	No	
Weeks of Sales Exposure	The number of weeks the item has had sales exposure (on had at location).	No	
Weeks Since First Sale	The number of weeks since the items first sale.	No	
Total Inventory	Total inventory for the item/location.	No	Total Warehouse Inventory plus Total Store Inventory
WH Stock On Hand	The current stock on hand at warehouse locations in.	No	
Warehouse On Order	Total on order qty for all stores in the price zone.  Note: On order is in the single unit size of the item, not case size.	No	
WH total Inventory	The total inventory for all stores in the zone.	No	Warehouse On Hand plus Warehouse On Order plus Warehouse In Transit

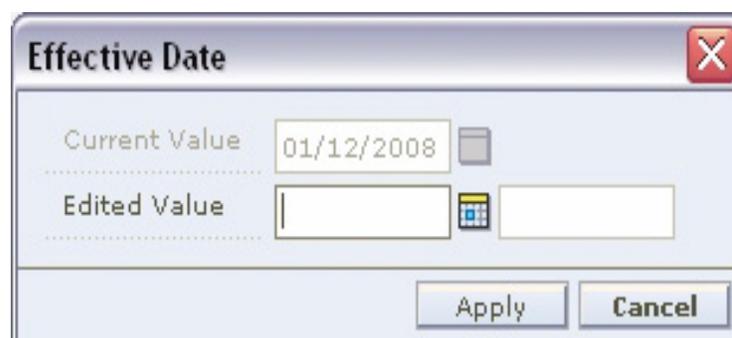
## Change the Value in a Cell

1. Double-click the cell.
2. Enter a value, change a value, or select from a drop-down list.

## Change the Values of Multiple Cells

1. Press and hold the **Ctrl** key while selecting cells or column headings to select multiple cells or columns.
2. Right-click on the selected cells or columns. An editing window appears that allows you to edit the value for all selected cells.

**Figure 6–1 Example Edit Value Window**



3. Enter a value, change a value, or select from a drop-down list.
4. Click **OK**. The values for all selected cells change.

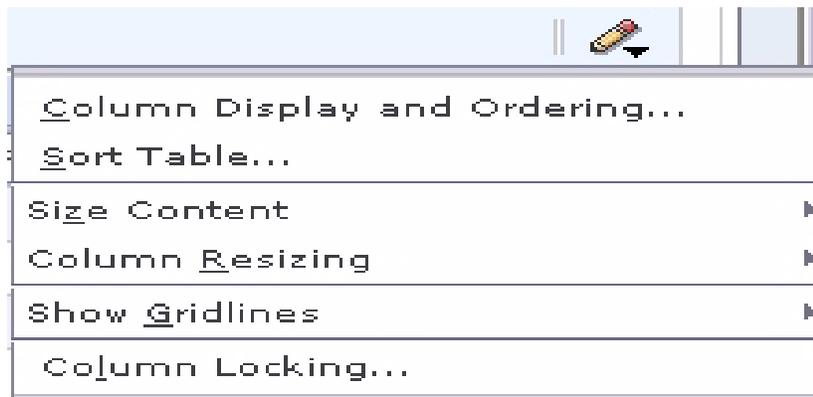
## Maintain Columns

You can edit the worksheet to display only the columns you are concerned with, change the order the columns display, and change the number of rows that appear.

### Hide and Position Columns

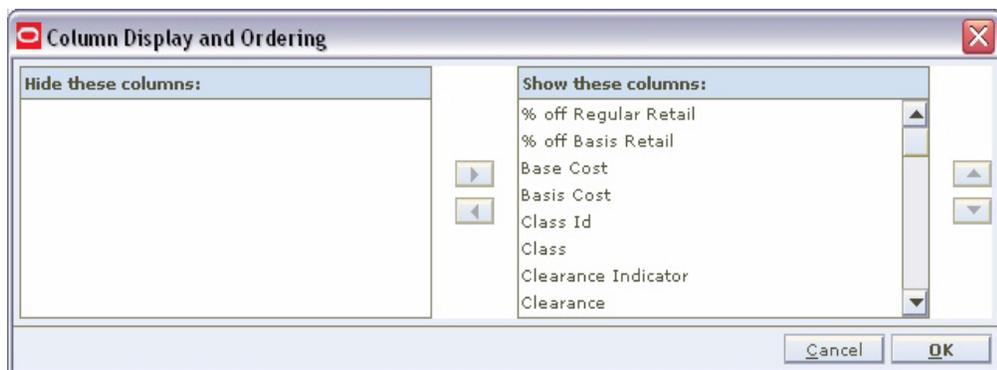
1. In the Worksheet Details pane, click the drop-down button. A drop-down menu is displayed.

**Figure 6–2 Drop-down Menu**



2. Select **Column Display and Ordering** from the drop-down menu. The **Column Display and Ordering** dialog opens.

**Figure 6–3 Column Display and Ordering Dialog Box**



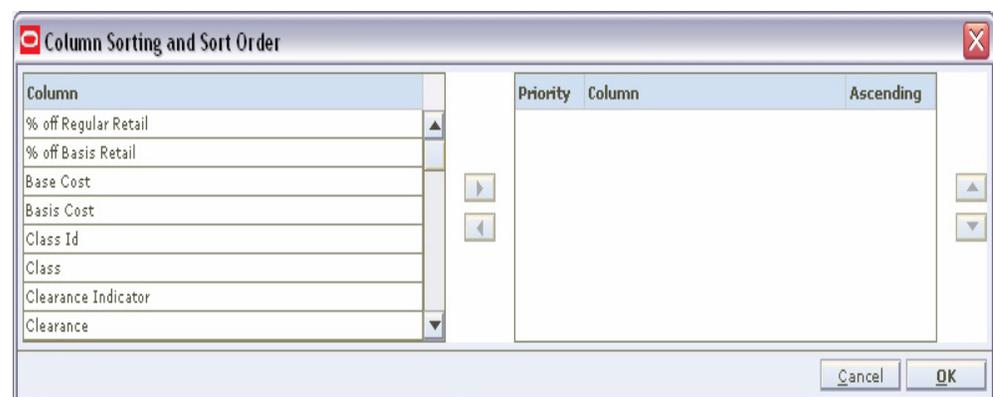
3. To hide columns:
  - a. Select a column to hide in the **Show these columns** pane.
  - b. Click the left arrow button. The column name appears in the **Hide these columns** pane.
  - c. Repeat the steps above to hide additional columns.

- To hide individual columns, right-click on the column heading in the Worksheet Details pane and select Hide Column from the drop-down menu.
- 4. To position columns:
  - a. Select a column to re-position in the Show these columns pane.
  - b. Click the and right and left arrow buttons as necessary to move the columns. This determines the position of the columns from left to right.
  - c. Repeat the steps above to re-position additional columns.
  - To reposition individual columns, click on the column heading in the Worksheet Details pane and drag it to the desired position.
- 5. Click **OK**. The worksheet columns are repositioned to reflect your changes.

### Sort the Worksheet

1. In the Worksheet Details pane, click the drop-down menu button.
2. Select Sort Table from the drop-down menu. The Column Sorting and Sort Order dialog opens.

**Figure 6–4** Column Sorting and Sort Order Window



3. Set the sort order of the worksheet:
  - a. Select a column from the Columns pane.
  - b. Click the right arrow button. The column name appears in the Priority Column pane.
  - c. Repeat the steps above to move additional columns.
  - d. Select a column in the Priority Column pane.
  - e. Click the right and left arrow buttons as necessary to move the columns. This determines the order by which the worksheet information is sorted.
  - f. Clear the Ascending column to have the column sort date in descending order.
  - g. Repeat the steps above as necessary.
4. Click **OK**. The worksheet columns are sorted to reflect your changes.
  - To sort based on individual columns, right-click on the column heading in the Worksheet Details pane and select either Make Primary Sort, Ascending or Make Primary Sort, Descending from the drop-down menu.

### Adjust the Size of the Worksheet Content

1. In the Worksheet Details pane, click the drop-down menu button.
2. Move the cursor over Size Content.

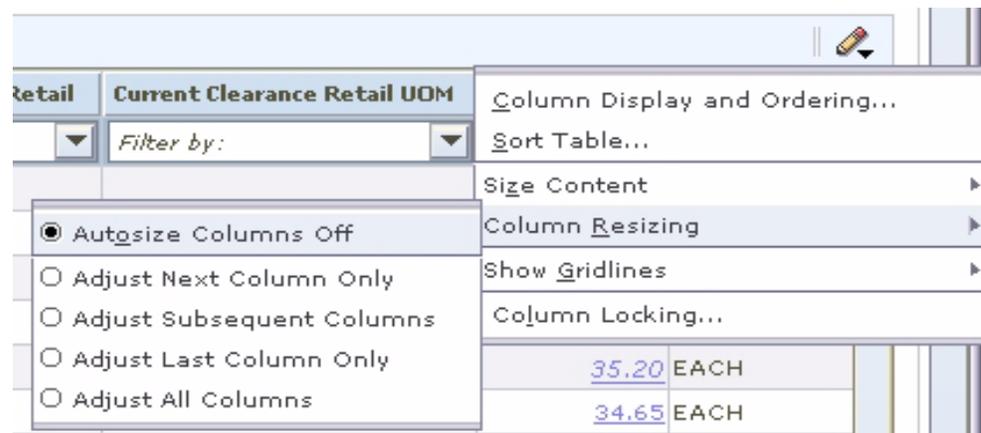
Figure 6–5 Worksheet Size Content



3. Select from the drop-down menu:
  - Smallest
  - Smaller
  - Standard
  - Larger
  - Largest
  - Fit All
4. The size of the content on the worksheet is adjusted.

### Adjust Column Sizes

1. In the Worksheet Details pane, click the button.
2. Move the cursor over Column Resizing.

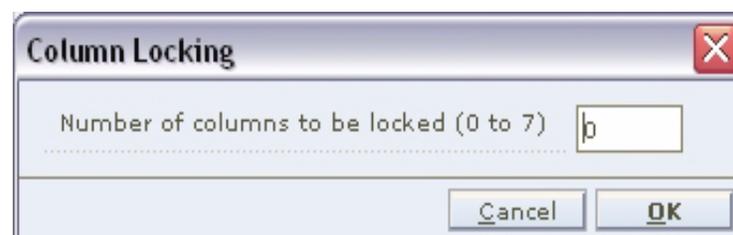
**Figure 6–6 Column Resizing**

3. Select from the drop-down menu:
  - Adjust Next Column Only
  - Adjust Subsequent Columns
  - Adjust Last Column Only
  - Adjust All Columns
4. The worksheet columns are adjusted.
  - To resize individual columns, position the cursor on the right-hand border of the column heading. The cursor will change to a double arrow. Click and drag right or left to resize the column.

### Set Non-Scrolling Columns

You can set up to seven columns to be locked or non-scrolling. This allows comparison of values in the locked columns to all other columns in the worksheet.

1. In the Worksheet Details pane, click the drop-down button.
2. Select Column Locking from the drop-down menu. The Column Locking dialog opens.

**Figure 6–7 Column Locking Dialog**

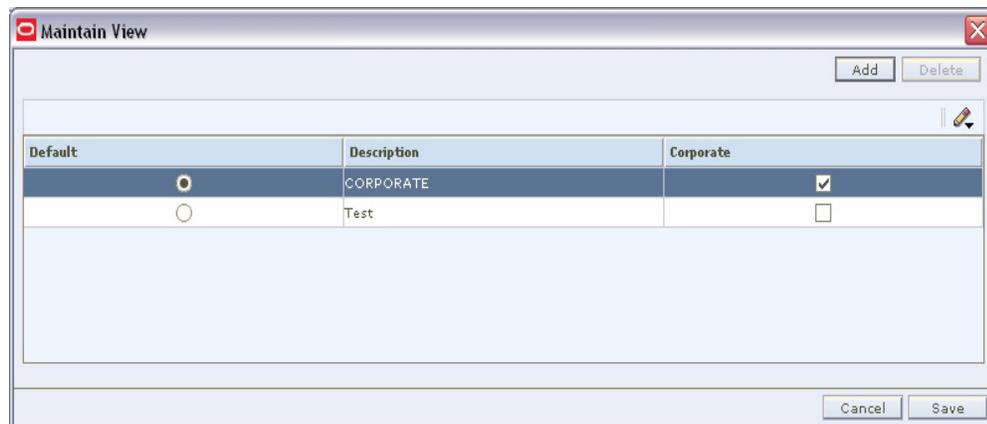
3. Enter the number of columns to lock.
4. Click **OK**. The columns are locked (non-scrolling).

## Maintain Views

### Add a View

1. Click **Maintain View**. The Maintain View dialog opens.

**Figure 6–8 Maintain View Dialog**



2. Click **Add**. A new line appears in the list.
3. Enter a name for the view in the Description field.
4. Select the Default View checkbox if you would like the view you created to be the default view.
5. Click **Save**. The view is saved and is accessible from the drop-down menu at the top of the Worksheet Details pane.

### Delete a View

1. Select the view you want to delete from the list.
2. Click **Delete**. The view is removed from the list.

### Select a View

Select a saved view from the drop-down menu.

## Apply Filters

Since worksheets may contain many detail records, RPM gives you the ability to filter those records so you see only the details that need attention. You can perform an ad-hoc filter on any column in the Worksheet Detail or you can create and save an advanced filter that you can continue to use in the future.

### Apply an Ad-Hoc Filter

In the Worksheet Details pane, select a value from the Filter by: drop-down menu above the column you wish to filter the worksheet by. The worksheet view is refreshed, with the filter applied.

### Clear an Ad-Hoc Filter

In the Worksheet Details pane, select Clear Filter from the Filter by: drop-down menu above the column that the filter was applied to. The filter is cleared and the worksheet returns to its previous state.

---



---

**Note:** Any other filters applied are still applied to the worksheet.

---



---

### Clear All Filters

In the Worksheet Details pane, select Revert to Default from the Filter by: drop-down menu above any column. The filters are cleared and the worksheet returns to its original state.

### Apply an Advanced Filter

---



---

**Note:** Advanced filters override any ad hoc filters previously applied to the worksheet.

---



---

1. In the Worksheet Details pane, select Advanced Filter from the Filter by: drop-down menu above the column you wish to filter the worksheet by. The Advanced Filter dialog opens.

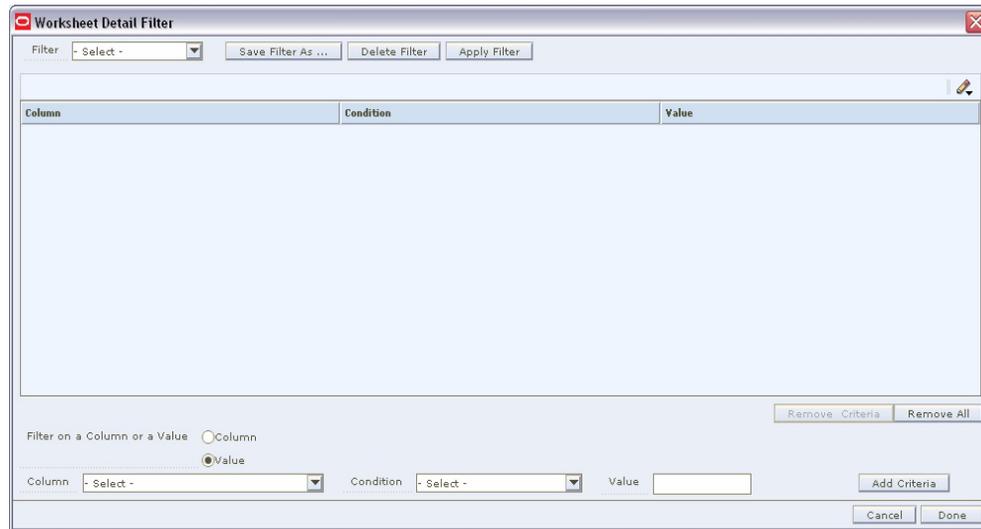
**Figure 6–9** Advanced Filter Window



2. Select a condition to apply to the column from the top drop-down list in the dialog.
3. Enter or select a value for the filter to look for in the next drop-down list.
4. You may enter an additional condition and value in the remaining drop downs.
5. Select a logical operator (And or Or) in the area between the drop downs.
6. Click **OK** to apply the filter to the worksheet. The worksheet refreshes, with the filter applied.

### Maintain Worksheet Detail Filters

In the Worksheet Details pane, click the Filter button. The Worksheet Detail Filter window opens.

**Figure 6–10 Worksheet Detail Filter Window**


---

**Note:** Click the clear filter button to remove the filter criteria.

---

### Create a Worksheet Detail Filter

1. Select Column to have the filter compare the values in two columns.  
OR  
Select Value to have the filter match a value in a column.
2. Select a column to filter by from the Column drop-down list.
3. Select a condition to apply to the filter from the Condition drop-down list.
4. Select a column to compare to the previous column in the Column drop-down list if you chose to filter by column above.  
OR  
Select of Enter a value for the filter to look for in the next field if you chose to filter by value above.
5. Click **Add Criteria**. The criteria is added to the Worksheet Detail Filter table.
6. Repeat the steps above to continue adding criteria. Continue to the next step.
7. Click **Save As** to save the filter.
  - Enter a name for the filter in the Save Filter dialog.

### Apply a Worksheet Detail Filter

1. Select a filter from the Filter drop-down list.
2. Select criteria from the Worksheet Detail Filter table. You can select multiple criteria.
3. Click **Apply Filter**. The Worksheet Detail Filter window is closed and the filter is applied.

### Delete Worksheet Detail Filter Criteria

1. Select a filter from the Filter drop-down list .
2. Select criteria from the Worksheet Detail Filter table.
3. Click **Remove Criteria**. The criteria is removed from the filter. Click **Remove All**, to remove all criteria from the filter.

### Delete a Worksheet Detail Filter

1. Select a filter from the Filter drop-down list.
2. Click **Delete Filter**. The filter is removed from the Filter drop-down list.

## View Conflict Check Results

The Conflict Check Results workspace allows you to review the results of background conflict checking for worksheets, price changes, promotions, and clearances. If the background conflict checking system option is selected, conflict reviews occur in the background, or when the system is not busy performing other tasks. An alert appears in the Conflict column of the worksheet, price change, promotion, or clearance maintenance pane when conflict checking is complete. At that time, follow the procedures below to view the results of background conflict checking.

When background conflict checking is off the system performs conflict checks immediately when **Conflict Check** is clicked from the Price Change, Promotions, or Clearances workspaces.

### View Results

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Conflict Check Results > View Conflict Check Results. The Conflict Check Results workspace opens.

Figure 6–11 Conflict Check Results Window

Result Date	Event Type	Id	Promotion Con	Promotion Con	Department	Class	Subclass	Zone	Result
02/23/2008	Clearance	921			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Clearance	922			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Clearance	923			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Clearance	924			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Clearance	941			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Clearance	942			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Price Change	1986			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Price Change	1986			2000	200	20		Conflicts Fo...
02/23/2008	Price Change	1986			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Price Change	1986			2000	200	20		Conflicts Fo...
02/23/2008	Price Change	2001			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Price Change	2002			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Promotion	2441	3021	3902	2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Promotion	2442	3022	3905	2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/23/2008	Promotion	2443	3023	3908	2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/09/2008	Clearance	881			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/09/2008	Clearance	882			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/09/2008	Clearance	883			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...
02/09/2008	Clearance	884			2000	200	20		No Conflicts ...

- Select the conflict results you want to view.

### Delete Conflict Check Results

1. Select the conflict results to delete.
2. Click **Delete**.

## Worksheet Status

The pricing worksheet can be maintained either by enabling the filter or by having the filter disabled. To enable or disable the filter, see "[Edit System Options](#)".

### Maintain a Pricing Worksheet with Filter Disabled

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Worksheet > Worksheet Status. The Worksheet Status workspace opens.

Figure 6–12 Worksheet Status Window

The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Status' window. At the top, there are fields for 'Reason' and 'Action' with an 'Apply' button. Below is a table with columns: Merchandise Level, Merchandise Id, Location Level, Location Id, Location, Status, Conflict, Last Review Date, Reason, Price Change Amount, Price Change SOH, Price Change Items, Sales Amount, and Sales Margin Amount. The table contains four rows of data for different departments. At the bottom, there are summary statistics for Total Price Change Amount, Total Price Change SOH, Total Price Change Items, and Total Sales Amount, along with 'Select All', 'Unselect All', and 'Worksheet Detail' buttons.

Merchandise Level	Merchandise Id	Location Level	Location Id	Location	Status	Conflict	Last Review Date	Reason	Price Change Amount	Price Change SOH	Price Change Items	Sales Amount	Sales Margin Amount
Department	9898	Zone	1561	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/10/2009		NZD0.00	0	2	NZD0.00	NZD0.00
Department	325	Zone	1161	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/12/2009		(\$3,372,000.00)	400	2	\$0.00	\$0.00
Department	731	Zone	161	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/12/2009		\$0.00	0	4	\$0.00	\$0.00
Department	731	Zone	661	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/10/2009		\$0.00	0	4	\$0.00	\$0.00

Summary Statistics:

- Total Price Change Amount: NZD0.00
- Total Price Change SOH: 0
- Total Price Change Items: 2
- Total Sales Amount: NZD0.00

1. Select the worksheet you want to maintain.

**Note:** You can select multiple worksheets as long as they are for the same department and currency.

2. Click **Worksheet Detail**. The Worksheet Details screen is displayed.

**Figure 6–13 Worksheet Details Window - Filter Disabled**

Worksheet Details

CORPORATE Maintain View

Item Level Parent Level

Diff Type

% off Regular Ret	% off Basis Retail	Base Cost	Basis Cost	Class Id	Class	Clearance Indicator	Clearance	Primary Competitor	Primary Competitor	Primary Competitor	Primary Competitor
Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼	Filter by: ▼
		\$200.00	\$200.00	325	Class Koh	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Yes				
		\$200.00	\$200.00	325	Class Koh	<input type="checkbox"/>					

Unselect All Select All Reset Data What If Suggest Data

Cancel Save Done

3. In the Item Level field, select the level in which you want the worksheet to be displayed. For example, Parent Level, to display all records at the parent level.
4. Click **Save** to save the worksheet.
5. Click **Done** to go back to the Worksheet Status screen.

### Maintain a Pricing Worksheet with Filter Enabled

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Worksheet > Worksheet Status. The Worksheet Status workspace opens.

Figure 6–14 Worksheet Status Window - Filter Enabled

Worksheet Status

Reason:

Action:

Merchandise Level	Merchandise Id	Location Level	Location Id	Location	Status	Conflict	Last Review Date	Reason	Price Change Amount	Price Change SOH	Price Change Items	Sales Amount	Sales Margin Amount
Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:	Filter by:
Department	9899	Zone	1561	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/10/2009		NZD0.00	0	2	NZD0.00	NZD0.00
Department	325	Zone	1161	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/12/2009		(\$3,372,000.00)	400	2	\$0.00	\$0.00
Department	731	Zone	161	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/12/2009		\$0.00	0	4	\$0.00	\$0.00
Department	731	Zone	661	MAO Zone	Approved*	!	10/10/2009		\$0.00	0	4	\$0.00	\$0.00

Total Price Change Amount:   
 Total Price Change SOH:   
 Total Price Change Items:   
 Total Sales Amount:

1. Select the worksheet you want to maintain.

---

**Note:** You can select multiple worksheets as long as they are for the same department and currency.

---

2. Click **Worksheet Filter**. The Worksheet Search screen is displayed.
  - Click **Skip Filter** to avoid the filtering.

**Figure 6–15 Worksheet Search Window**

3. In the Worksheet Search pane, select the necessary fields and click **Search**.
  - The records based on the search criteria are displayed in the Worksheet Filtered Result pane.
4. Click **Done** to go back to the Worksheet Status screen.

### Submit a Pricing Worksheet for Approval

The Pricing Worksheet status must be in "In Progress" to enable the Submit action. To change the status of the Pricing Worksheet from New or Updated to In Progress, you need to have at least one row or item selected for price change.

1. Select the worksheet that you want to submit.
2. Review the information in the Worksheet Status window to ensure that it is correct.
3. From the Action drop-down list, click **Submit**.
4. Click **Apply**. The status is changed to Submitted and the Pricing Worksheet is ready for approval.

---



---

**Note:** Before the status changes to Submitted, RPM checks the Pricing Worksheet to ensure that there are no conflicts. The status options that are available from the Action drop-down list change based on current status of the worksheet's details.

---



---

---

## Approve a Pricing Worksheet

---

**Note:** The Pricing Worksheet status must be in either Submitted or Delete Pending status before you can select the approve action.

---

1. Select the worksheet that you want to approve.
2. When you are ready to approve the submitted or delete Pending Pricing Worksheet, select Approve.
3. Click **Apply**. The Pricing Worksheet information is saved and applied.

---

**Note:** For worksheets in Submitted status, before the status changes to Approved, RPM checks the Pricing Worksheet to ensure that there are no conflicts. Delete pending status worksheets are not conflict checked before being moved to Deleted status. When the system option, Dynamic Area Differentials is off, secondary area worksheets are enabled when the primary area is approved. When the system option is on, changes to secondary areas happen dynamically after changes to the primary area.

---

## Reject a Pricing Worksheet

You can reject a Pricing Worksheet that has a status as Submitted or Delete Pending. When you reject a submitted or delete pending Pricing Worksheet, its status changes to Rejected or Delete Rejected.

---

**Note:** If you want to work with the Pricing Worksheet when its status is Rejected, Reset the status of the Pricing Worksheet (see the procedure below).

---

1. Select the worksheet that you want to reject.
2. You can enter a Reason for the rejection in the Reason field. Click the edit (dotted) button to open an editing window where you can enter a reason up to 250 characters long.
3. From the Action drop-down list, select Reject.
4. Click **Apply**. The status of the Pricing Worksheet changes to Rejected or Delete Rejected.

## Reset the Status of a Pricing Worksheet

Use the Reset action to return the worksheet to its previous status.

1. Select the worksheet that you need to reset the status of.
2. From the Action drop-down list, select Reset.
3. Click **Apply**. The Worksheet Status window refreshes and the worksheet is returned to its previous status.

## Delete a Pricing Worksheet

1. Select the worksheet that you want to delete.

2. From the Action drop-down list, select Delete.
3. Click **Apply**. The Pricing Worksheet is moved to Delete Pending status and is ready to have your deletion approved or rejected.

---

**Note:** The options that are available from the Action drop-down list change based on worksheet's current status.

---

## Worksheet Detail

The following section describes worksheet detail.

### Maintain Worksheet Details

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Worksheet > Worksheet Status. The Worksheet Status workspace opens.

**Figure 6–16 Worksheet Status Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Status' window. At the top, there is a 'Reason' text box and an 'Apply' button. Below that is an 'Action' dropdown menu currently set to '- Select -'. The main area contains a table with the following columns: Merchandise Level, Merchandise Id, Location Level, Location Id, Location, Status, Conflict, Last Review Date, Reason, and Price Change A. Each column has a 'Filter by:' dropdown menu below it. The table contains 9 rows of data.

Merchandise Level	Merchandise Id	Location Level	Location Id	Location	Status	Conflict	Last Review Date	Reason	Price Change A
Department	5003	Zone	1361	Zone1	Approved*		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5000	Zone	1368	Zone1	In Progress*		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1370	Zone3	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1371	Zone4	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1372	Zone5	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1368	Zone1	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1369	Zone2	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5002	Zone	502	Z1-Stores	New		01/14/2008		(\$1,504.70)

1. Select the worksheet you want to view the details of. You can select multiple worksheets or click **Select All** to select of all the worksheets.
2. Click **Worksheet Detail**. The Worksheet Details workspace opens.

Figure 6-17 Worksheet Details Window

The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Details' window. At the top, there is a 'CORPORATE' dropdown and a 'Maintain View' button. To the right, there are 'Item Level' and 'Tran Level' dropdowns, and a 'Diff Type' input field. Below this is a table with the following columns: '% off Regular Retail', '% off Basis Retail', 'Base Cost', 'Basis Cost', 'Class Id', 'Class', and 'Clearance Indicator'. Each column has a 'Filter by:' dropdown. The table contains 18 rows of data. The 'Clearance Indicator' column has checkboxes, with the last row checked. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel', 'Save', and 'Done' buttons.

% off Regular Retail	% off Basis Retail	Base Cost	Basis Cost	Class Id	Class	Clearance Indicator
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-0.98%	-0.98%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-5.34%	-5.34%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-11.54%	-11.54%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.08%	5.08%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.47%	4.47%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Merchandise Extract Item Deletions

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Worksheet > Merchandise Extract Item Deletions. The Merchandise Extract Item Deletions workspace opens.

**Figure 6–18 Merchandise Extract Item Deletions Window**

Pricing Strategy	Merchandise Id	Merchandise Level	Zone	Zone Group	Date	Item Count
Filter by: ▾	Filter by: ▾	Filter by: ▾	Filter by: ▾	Filter by: ▾	Filter by: ▾	Filter by: ▾
781	5001	Department	1368	1643	01-10-2008	72
785	5002	Department	502	562	01-10-2008	6
783	5000	Department	1368	1643	01-10-2008	4

1. Double-click on the row on the summary table that you would like to see more details. The details table is populated with the items and information that were excluded from the resulting worksheet for the particular run of the merchandise extract.
2. Filter the detail results by selecting the appropriate drop-down menus.

**Table 6–2 Drop-down Menu Definitions**

Column	Definition
Area Differential Exclusion	Item/location combinations that have been excluded from a Secondary Area Differential.
Invalid Maintain Margin Cost	The strategy is maintain margin and the item/location does not have a cost change in the cost review period.
Invalid Secondary Item	Item/locations that meet one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Does not belong to any link code whereas the same item belongs to a link code in the primary area.</li> <li>■ Does not exist in the primary area AND does not belong to any link code in the secondary area.</li> <li>■ Belongs to a link code that does not exist in the primary area.</li> </ul>

**Table 6–2 (Cont.) Drop-down Menu Definitions**

<b>Column</b>	<b>Definition</b>
Missing Link Item	<p>When one or more item from a item-link code/zone group is missing the entire group is excluded.</p> <p>Item/locations that meet one of the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If any one item from a Link code is present in the worksheet, all items in the same Link code must also be present in the worksheet.</li> <li>■ Items sharing the same Link code should have the same Basis UOM.</li> <li>■ Items sharing the same Link code should all have the same Class Vat Indicator settings.</li> <li>■ For Margin and Maintain Margin Strategies, items sharing the same Link code should have the same Margin Market Basket code.</li> <li>■ For Competitive Margin Strategies, items sharing the same Link code should have the same Competitive Market Basket code.</li> </ul>
New Item Location	Item/locations that are not present in at the start of a review period cannot be added in the middle of a review period.
No Cost	No cost could be found for the item/location.
No Retail	No retail could be found for the item/location.
Candidate Rule Exclusion	The item/location meets a exclusion candidate rule.
Variable Link Code	The item does not have the same Link Code at all locations in the zone.
Variable Link MBC	The items sharing a market basket code do not have the same Link Code at all locations in the zone.
Variable Link Selling UOM	The items sharing a link code do not have the same Basis UOM at all locations in the zone.
Variable Link Vat Indicator	The items sharing a link code do not have the same vat indicator at all locations in the zone.
Variable Zone Selling UOM	The item does not have the same Basis UOM at all locations in the zone. The strategy is maintain margin and the item/location does not have a cost change in the cost review period.

### **Edit Proposed Retail Prices**

Enter a new retail price in the New Retail field as required for each item.

### **Take or Reject Proposed Price Changes**

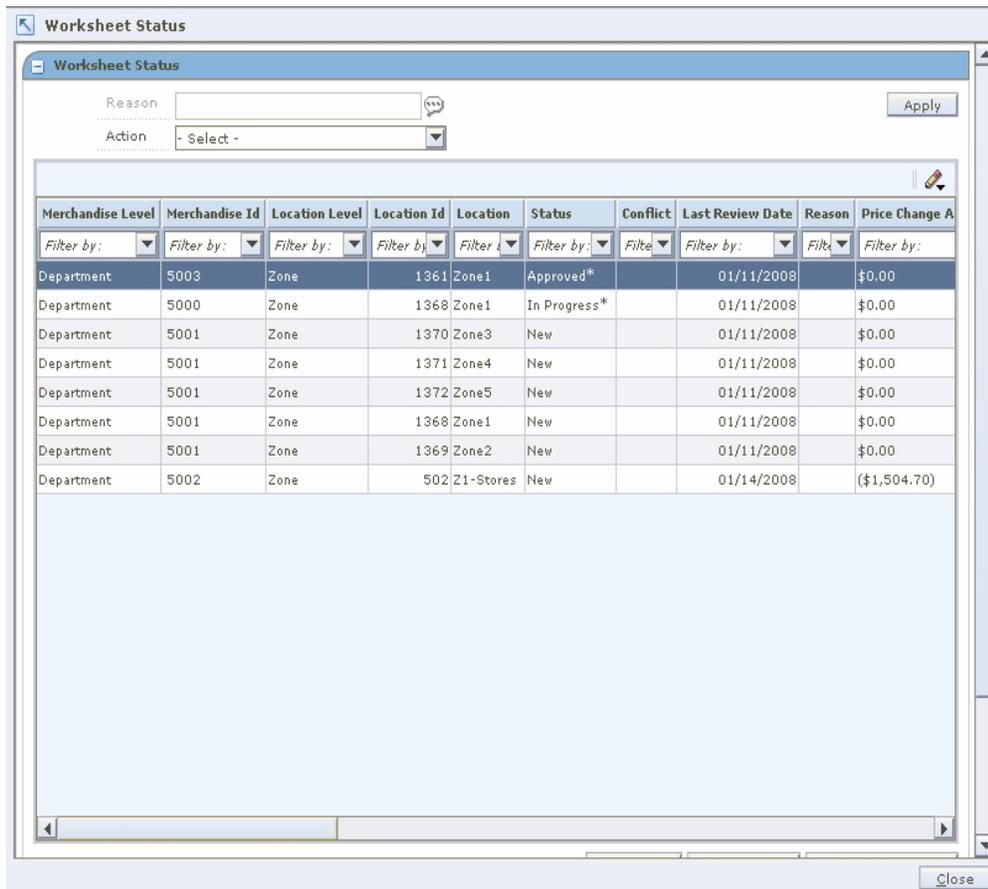
1. Select the level to view the worksheet at from the Item Level drop-down list.
2. Change the Price Change Indicator field in the appropriate row:
  - Select "Take" to accept the proposed price change for the item.
  - Select "Don't Take" to reject the proposed price change for the item.
3. Click **Save**. Your changes to the worksheet are saved and the Worksheet Status workspace opens.

- See "Worksheet Columns" for a complete list of the editable columns in the worksheet.

**View Totals**

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Worksheet > Worksheet Status. The Worksheet Status workspace opens.

**Figure 6–19 Worksheet Status Window**



- Select the worksheet you want to view the details of. You can select multiple worksheets or click **Select All** to select of all the worksheets.
- Click **Worksheet Detail**. The Worksheet Details workspace opens.

Figure 6–20 Worksheet Details Window

The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Details' window. At the top, there is a 'CORPORATE' dropdown and a 'Maintain View' button. Below that, 'Item Level' is set to 'Tran Level' and 'Diff Type' is empty. The main area is a table with the following columns: '% off Regular Retail', '% off Basis Retail', 'Base Cost', 'Basis Cost', 'Class Id', 'Class', and 'Clearance Indicator'. Each column has a 'Filter by:' dropdown. The table contains 18 rows of data. The first row has a '-0.98%' change. The second row has a '-5.34%' change. The third row has a '-11.54%' change. The fourth row has a '5.08%' change. The fifth row has a '4.47%' change. The last row has a checked 'Clearance Indicator' box. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel', 'Save', and 'Done' buttons.

% off Regular Retail	% off Basis Retail	Base Cost	Basis Cost	Class Id	Class	Clearance Indicator
-0.98%	-0.98%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-5.34%	-5.34%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-11.54%	-11.54%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.08%	5.08%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.47%	4.47%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

3. Select the row you want to view totals for by clicking the box to the left of the row. Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.

---

**Note:** If no items are selected, the totals appear for all items where a price change would occur.

---

4. Click the Totals button. The Totals window opens.

Figure 6–21 Worksheet Totals Window

Zone Id	Zone Name	Price Change Amount	Price Change SOH	Price Change Item	Sales Change Amount
All		\$0.00	06		\$0.00
1371	Zone4-STZG-B	\$0.00	06		\$0.00

### View Price Change Totals

1. Select the Price Change Totals tab. The totals for all of the item rows that you selected appear on the Totals window.
2. Click **Done**. The Totals window is closed.

### View Sales Totals

1. Select the Sales Totals tab. The totals for the sales for the item rows that you selected appear on the Totals window.
2. Click **Done**. The Totals window closes.

### View Competitive Analysis Totals

1. Select the Competitive Analysis Totals tab. The totals for how you are competing in all retail zones that you have selected appear on the Totals window.
2. Click **Done**. The Totals window is closed.

## What-If Analysis

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Worksheet > Worksheet Status. The Worksheet Status workspace opens.

Figure 6–22 Worksheet Status Window

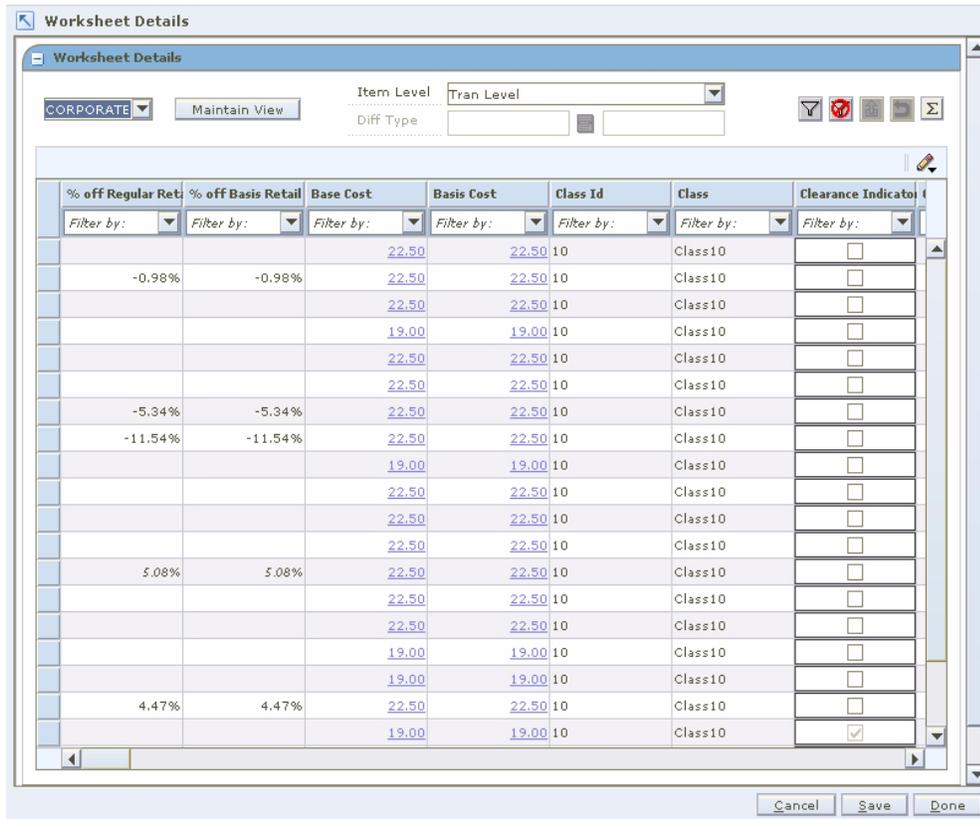
The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Status' window. At the top, there are fields for 'Reason' and 'Action' (set to '- Select -') with an 'Apply' button. Below this is a table with the following columns: Merchandise Level, Merchandise Id, Location Level, Location Id, Location, Status, Conflict, Last Review Date, Reason, and Price Change A. Each column has a 'Filter by:' dropdown menu. The table contains 10 rows of data:

Merchandise Level	Merchandise Id	Location Level	Location Id	Location	Status	Conflict	Last Review Date	Reason	Price Change A
Department	5003	Zone	1361	Zone1	Approved*		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5000	Zone	1368	Zone1	In Progress*		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1370	Zone3	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1371	Zone4	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1372	Zone5	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1368	Zone1	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5001	Zone	1369	Zone2	New		01/11/2008		\$0.00
Department	5002	Zone	502	Z1-Stores	New		01/14/2008		(\$1,504.70)

At the bottom right of the window is a 'Close' button.

1. Select the worksheet you want to view the details of. You can select multiple worksheets or click **Select All** to select all of the worksheets.
2. Click **Worksheet Detail**. The Worksheet Details workspace opens.

**Figure 6–23 Worksheet Details Window**



3. Select the row you want to perform a what-if analysis on by clicking the box to the left of the row.
  - Press and hold the **Ctrl** key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.

**Perform What-if Analysis on a Clearance Pricing Strategy**

1. Click **What If**. The What If window opens.

Figure 6–24 What-if Clearance Window

**Price Strategy - Clearance**

**Pricing Guides**

Current: - Select -

New: - Select -

**Markdown Percents**

Markdown Number	Current	New
1	30%	30%
2	40%	40%
3	50%	50%

Buttons: Cancel, Reset, Apply

2. Make changes to the following fields to test what happens to the worksheet:
  - **Price guide:** Select a new price guide from the New drop-down list.
  - **Markdown percent:** Enter a markdown percent in the New Markdown Percent field.
3. Click **Apply**. The What If window is closed and the data in the Worksheet change to reflect the changes made in the What If window.

### Perform What-if Analysis on a Competitive Pricing Strategy

1. Click **What If**. The What If window opens.

Figure 6–25 What-if Competitive Window

**Price Strategy - Competitive**

**Pricing Guides**

Current - Select -

New - Select -

**Competitor Parameters**

Current Compete Type Match \* New Compete Type Match

Current Compete Percent New Compete Percent

Current Acceptable Range From

Current Acceptable Range To

Cancel Reset Apply

2. Make changes to the following fields to test what happens to the worksheet:
  - **Price guide:** Select a new price guide from the New drop down.
  - **Compete type:** Select a different compete type for the whole worksheet or by code by selecting from the New Compete Type drop downs.
  - **Compete percent:** Enter a new compete percent in the New Compete Percent field.
3. Click **Apply**. The What If window is closed and the data in the Worksheet change to reflect the changes made in the What If window.

### Perform What-if Analysis on a Margin Pricing Strategy

1. Click **What If**. The What If window opens.

Figure 6–26 What-if Margin Window

Code	Current Margin Target	Current Acceptable Range From	Current Acceptable Range To	New Margin Target
No Code	85%			85%

2. Make changes to the following fields to test what happens to the worksheet:
  - **Price guide:** Select a new price guide from the New drop down.
  - **Margin target:** Enter a margin target in the New Margin Target field.
3. Click **Apply**. The What If window is closed and the data in the Worksheet change to reflect the changes made in the What If window.

### Reset What-if Data

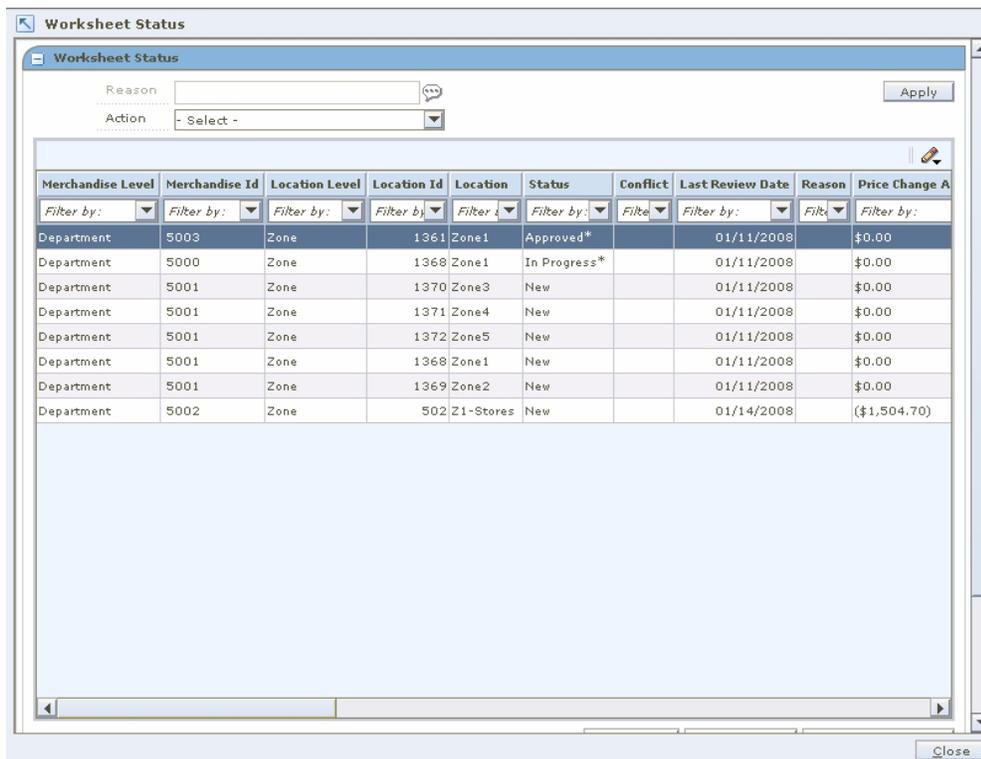
1. Click **What If**. The What If window opens.
2. Click **Reset**. The values are returned to their original value.
3. Click **Apply**. The What if window closes and the data in the worksheet returns to original values.

## Export a Worksheet

The Export function allows you to export the current view of the worksheet to a Comma Separated Value (.CSV) file.

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Worksheet > Worksheet Status. The Worksheet Status workspace opens.

Figure 6-27 Worksheet Status Window



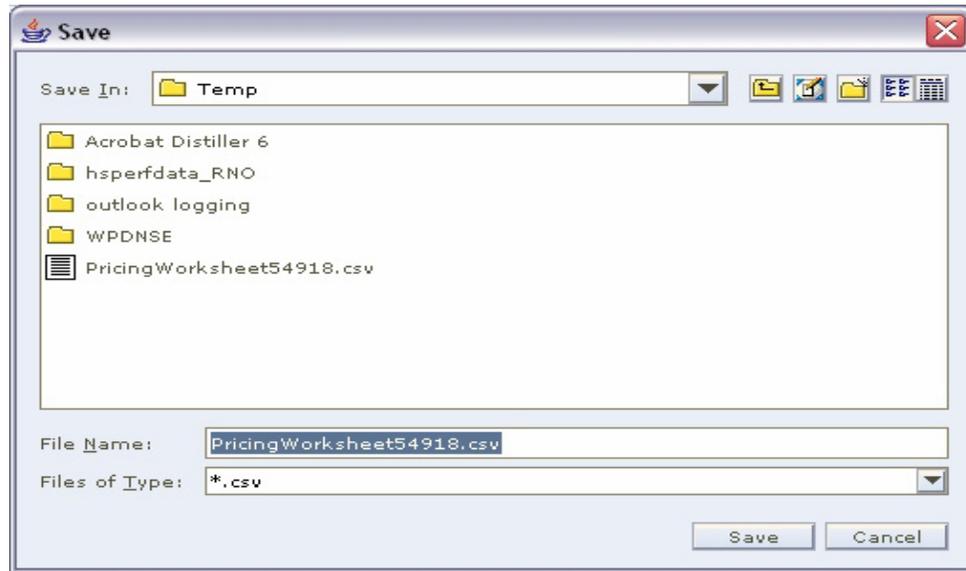
1. Select the worksheet you want to view the details of. You can select multiple worksheets or click **Select All** to select of all the worksheets.
2. Click **Worksheet Detail**. The Worksheet Details workspace opens.

Figure 6–28 Worksheet Details Window

The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Details' window. At the top, there are controls for 'CORPORATE', 'Maintain View', 'Item Level' (Tran Level), and 'Diff Type'. Below these is a table with the following columns: '% off Regular Retail', '% off Basis Retail', 'Base Cost', 'Basis Cost', 'Class Id', 'Class', and 'Clearance Indicator'. Each column has a 'Filter by:' dropdown. The table contains 18 rows of data. The 'Clearance Indicator' column has checkboxes, with the last row checked. At the bottom right, there are 'Cancel', 'Save', and 'Done' buttons.

% off Regular Retail	% off Basis Retail	Base Cost	Basis Cost	Class Id	Class	Clearance Indicator
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-0.98%	-0.98%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-5.34%	-5.34%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
-11.54%	-11.54%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
5.08%	5.08%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
4.47%	4.47%	22.50	22.50	10	Class10	<input type="checkbox"/>
		19.00	19.00	10	Class10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

3. Select the row you want to export by clicking the box to the left of the row.
  - Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.
4. Click the Export (up arrow) button. The Save window opens.

**Figure 6–29 Worksheet Export save Window**

5. Select a location to save the file to from the Save In drop down.
6. Enter a name for the file in the File Name field.
7. Click **Save**. The file is saved.
8. Open the file in the program of your choice such as a spreadsheet or word processor.

---



---

## Price Changes

### Creating a Price Change

A price change is the permanent change in the price of an item. You can use the price guides to move the new price to established price points or round the price.

The Create Price Change workspace allows you to establish the price changes for an item or group of items at a location or group of locations. When you open the window, the Price Change List and Price Change Maintenance panes open. After you create your price change in the Price Change Maintenance pane, it is added to the Price Change List pane.

If you select locations with multiple currencies, you can only choose to create a price change by percent or to reset the point of sale (POS) price. You cannot create multi-unit pricing across multiple currencies.

Create price change allows you to create the following types of price changes.

- **Regular:** The price change is occurring at the retailer's initiative.
- **Vendor Funded:** The supplier is subsidizing a portion of the price change.
- **Link codes:** Associate items to each other at a location and price them exactly the same.

When a price change is added to RPM, it must go through a series of checks before it can be applied to an item/location. Depending on your user role, you may not be able to move the retail price change to the next status. A change to submitted or approved status, or from worksheet back to approved, results in a conflict check. A change to approved status results in the application of area differential strategies for the price change. A price change may be in any of the following statuses:

**Table 7-1** Status of Price Changes

Status	Definition
Worksheet	The price change has been started, but not reviewed or sent out.
Submitted	The price change has been completed and is pending review. Conflict checking has occurred for the price change.
Approved	The price change has been reviewed and accepted. The price change is communicated to the locations for which the price change is effective.
Executed	The new prices established are effective for the item/location.
Rejected	The price change has been reviewed and declined.

After you create a price change, you can maintain different aspects of the price change. You can create exceptions to the items and locations that exist on the price change, change the specifics of the price change, and can copy an existing price change.

The procedures below allow you to navigate and search for price changes through the Maintain Price Change task on the Task Pad; however, you can accomplish these same tasks after you create a price change and the price change is displayed in the Price Change List pane in the Create Price Change workspace.

## Search for a Price Change

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Changes > Maintain Price Change. The Price Change Search pane opens.

**Figure 7-1 Price Change Search Window**

1. Enter criteria as necessary to restrict the search to the price changes you want to maintain.

**Table 7-2 Search Criteria**

Field	Criteria
Type	Select Regular, Vendor Funded, Link Code, or All price change types.
Status	Select Approved, Executed, Rejected, Submitted, or Worksheet status price changes.
Approved By	Enter a username to search for price changes approved by a specific user.
Created By	Enter a username to search for price changes created by a specific user.
Reason Code	Select reason codes
Deal ID	Select deal IDs to search for price changes related to specific deals. First select Vendor Funded from the Type field.
Deal Detail ID	Select deal detail IDs to search for price changes related to specific deal details. First select Vendor Funded from the Type field, then select a deal from the Deal ID field.
Price Change ID	Select price change IDs to search for specific price changes.

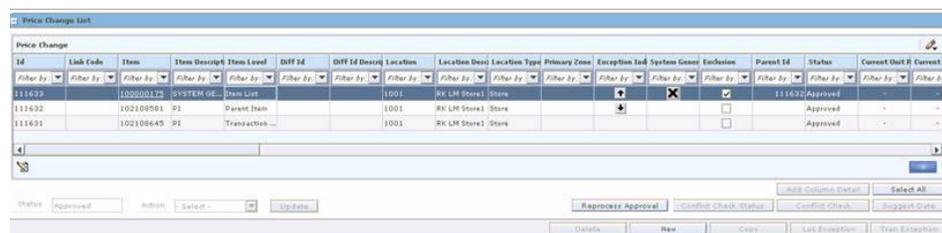
**Table 7-2 (Cont.) Search Criteria**

Field	Criteria
Effective Date	Select an effective date to search for price changes with a specific effective date.
Approved Date	Select an approved date to search for price changes with a specific approved date.
Create Date	Select a create date to search for price changes with a specific create date.
Price Guide	Select price guides to search for price changes with specific price guides.
Merchandise Level	Select criteria in the following fields to search for price changes in a specific merchandise level: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Department</li> <li>■ Class</li> <li>■ Subclass</li> <li>■ Item Type</li> <li>■ Item Level</li> <li>■ Diff Type</li> <li>■ Item</li> <li>■ Diff</li> </ul>
Zone/Location	Select Zone Groups, Zones, and Locations to search for price changes from specific zones or locations.
Market Basket Code	Select a Market Basket Code to search for price changes with a specific Market Basket Code.
Link Code	Select a Link Code to search for price changes with a specific Link Code.

**Note:** Select the Search on this Level Only checkbox to restrict the search to the selected level.

2. Click **Search**. Your results appear in the Price Change List pane.

**Figure 7-2 Price Change List Window**



## Conflict Checking

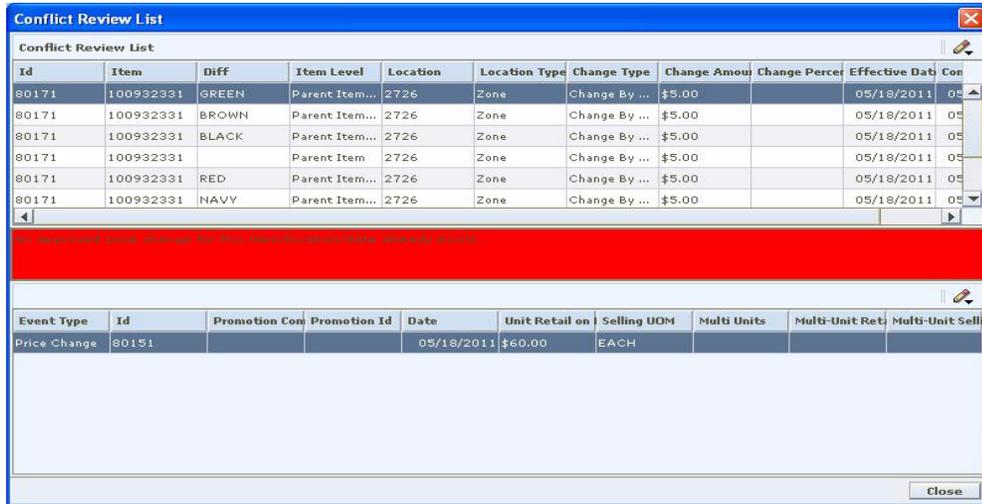
Whenever the status of a price event changes, conflict checking is performed and the conflicts are displayed.

Conflict check is done for the following status only.

- Worksheet to Approved
- Worksheet to Submitted
- Submitted to Approved
- Approved to Worksheet

The existence of any conflict is identified by a binocular icon in the conflicts column of the multi-record block. To review a conflict, click on the binocular icon, the Conflict Review List window opens.

**Figure 7-3 Conflict Review List Window**



If the event type is Price Change or Clearance, the promotion ID and promotion component ID are not displayed. The promotion ID and promotion component ID are displayed if the event type is Promotion.

**Conflict Check Status**

In the Maintenance workspace, click **Conflict Check Status**. The Refresh Status window opens.

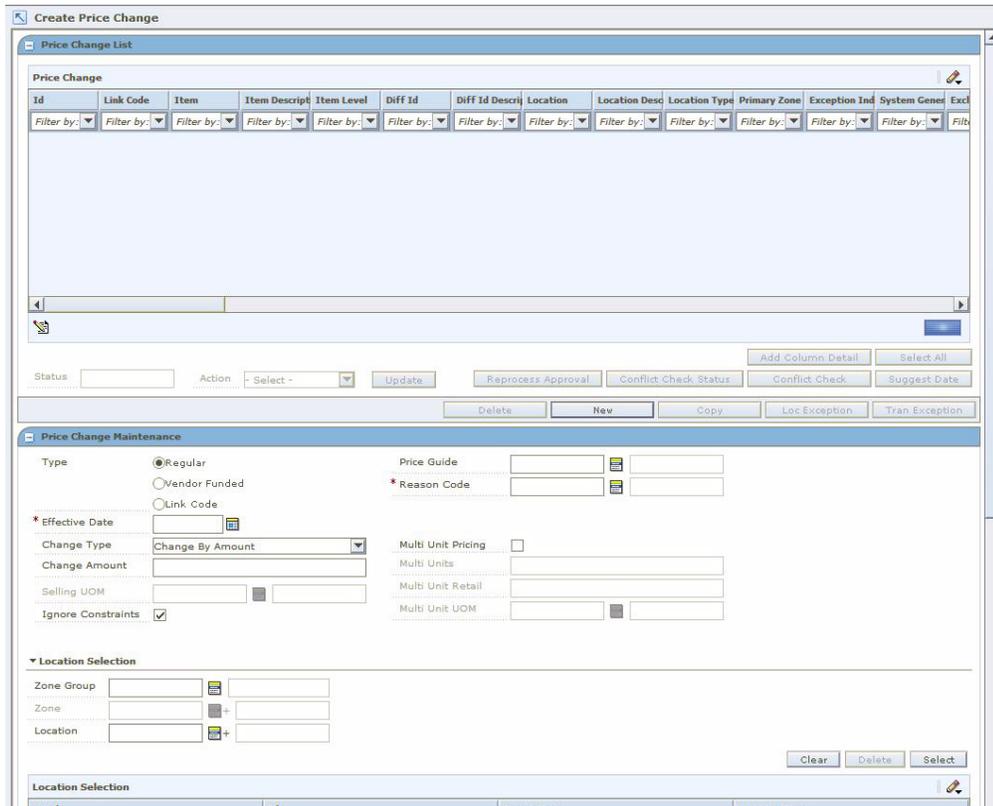
**Figure 7-4 Refresh Status Window**

1. Click **Refresh** to update the conflict checking state in the window.
2. Click **Exit** to go back to the price event window.
  - The status in the multi-record block is refreshed.
3. Click **Cancel** to close the status window without making any changes or refreshing the price event.

## Create a Regular Price Change

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Changes > Create Price Change. The Create Price Change workspace opens.

Figure 7-5 Create Price Change Window



1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Type field, select Regular.

Figure 7-6 Price Change Maintenance Window

The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Price Changes' window. At the top is a 'Price Change List' table with columns: Id, Link Code, Item, Item Description, Item Level, Diff Id, Diff Id Description, Location, Location Description, Location Type, Primary Zone, Exception Ind, System Generated, Exclusion, Parent Id, and Current. A single row is visible with Id 2742, Item 100820031, Item Description 'eee', Item Level 'Parent Item...', Diff Id 'GREEN', Diff Id Description 'Green', Location '1', Location Description 'USD locations/Zone', and Location Type 'Zone'. Below the table are buttons for 'Status' (Worksheet), 'Action' (Select -), 'Update', 'Reprocess Approval', 'Conflict Check Status', 'Conflict Check', 'Suggest', 'Delete', 'New', 'Copy', 'Loc Exception', and 'Tran Exc'.

The 'Price Change Maintenance' form below has the following fields and options:

- Type:  Regular,  Vendor Funded,  Link Code
- Price Guide: [ ] [ ]
- \* Reason Code: 2 [ ] Price Change
- \* Effective Date: 03/03/2012 [ ]
- Change Type: Change By Amount [ ]
- Change Amount: 5.00 [ ]
- Selling UOM: [ ] [ ]
- Ignore Constraints:
- Multi Unit Pricing:
- Multi Units: [ ]
- Multi Unit Retail: [ ]
- Multi Unit UOM: [ ] [ ]

Below the form is a 'Location Selection' section with a table:

Level	Id	Description	Location Type
Zone	1	USD locations	

Buttons for 'Clear', 'Delete', 'Cancel', and 'Save + Repeat' are also visible.

- In the Effective Date field, enter the date the price change should go into effect, or click the calendar button and select a date

---

**Note:** The Effective Date you set depends on the number of days set in the system option Price Change Processing Days. The earliest date that price changes can be created is the current date plus the price change processing days. If you have emergency price change permission, Price Change Processing Days will be ignored.

---

- In the Price Guide field, enter the ID of the price guide you want to apply to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

**Note:** The price guide only applies to the items in the same department as the price guide and locations that share the same currency as the currency on the price guide

---

- In the Reason Code field, enter the ID of the reason you are creating the price change, or click the LOV button and select a reason code.

## Set Up Price Change Type

1. In the Price Change Type field, select the type of price change that is occurring.

---



---

**Note:** If you selected locations with multiple currencies, you can only choose to create a price change by percent or to reset the POS price.

---



---

- **Change By Percent:** A price for an item is changed by a percentage added to or removed from the basis regular retail. The percent of change is determined by the percent entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Change By Amount:** A price for an item is changed by an amount added or removed from the basis regular retail. The amount of change is determined by the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Fixed Price:** The price for the item will be at a specified retail that will be defined in the change amount field.
  - **Reset POS Price:** The item will be recognized on a price change but no change to the retail will occur. When you select Reset POS Price, the Change Amount field and Selling UOM field will be disabled.
2. In the Change Amount field, enter an amount.
  3. Enter or select a value in the Selling UOM field (Optional for a Fixed Price change.) If you leave this field blank, the selling unit of measure will default to the current selling unit of measure for the items/location combination. (The Selling UOM field is only active for a Fixed Price change.)

---



---

**Note:** If you do not specify a Selling UOM value, and the selected items do not have the same selling unit of measure, you will be prompted with an error message when you click **Apply**. Enter a Selling UOM value before you re-apply the price change.

---



---

4. If appropriate, define the multi-unit pricing for a price change:
  - a. Select the Multi Unit Pricing check box.
  - b. In the Multi Units field, enter the number of units that are part of the price change.
  - c. In the Multi Unit Retail field, enter the new price for the items.
  - d. In the Multi Unit UOM field, enter the ID of the unit of measure that applies to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a unit of measure.
5. If appropriate, select the Ignore Constraints box. When unchecked, the promotion constraints will be taken into account when conflict checking is performed on the price change. When checked, promotion constraints will be ignored when conflict checking is performed on the price change.

## Select Locations

1. In the Location Selection area, select how you want to add locations to the price change.
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.

- **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
- **Location:** Enter the ID of the location that you want to add to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a location.

---



---

**Note:** You can create price changes at the zone or location level.

---



---

2. Click **Select**. The zones and/or locations that meet your criteria are added to the table in the Location Selection table.

### Select Items

1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Item Selection area, select items on the price change using the available fields.

---



---

**Note:** All fields with LOV buttons allow multiple selections.

---



---

To select items from all available items, enter an ID in the Item field, or click the LOV button and select item.

Or

- a. Enter information in the enabled fields to limit the items available in the Item field.
  - In the Department field, enter a department number, or click the LOV button and select a department.
  - In the Class field, enter a class number, or click the LOV button and select a class.
  - In the Subclass field, enter a subclass number, or click the LOV button and select a subclass.
  - In the Item Type drop-down list, select Item or Item List.

---



---

**Note:** If you select Item List from the Item Type drop down, only item lists will be selectable from the Item field. If you select Item, only single items that conform to the other criteria specified will be selectable.

---



---

- When you select Item from the Item Type drop-down list, in the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, or Transaction Level Item. When you select ItemList from the Item Type drop-down list, select ItemList or Item.

---



---

**Note:** When you select Item for ItemList Item Type, the ItemList is exploded to all items in the ItemList. When you select ItemList for the ItemList Item Type, the price change is created at the ItemList level.

---



---

- In the Diff Type drop-down list, select a diff type.
- In the Diff drop-down list, select a diff.

- In the Item field, click the LOV button and select items.

**Note:** If the Item Type is selected as Item List, the Item Level is defaulted to Item List and the Item Editor defaults to Item List.

**Figure 7-7 Item Selection Pane**

The screenshot shows the 'Item Selection' pane with the following fields and values:

- Department: [Empty]
- Class: [Empty]
- Subclass: [Empty]
- Item Type: Item List
- Item Level: Item List
- Diff Type: - Select -
- Item List: [Empty] [View Items]
- Diff: [Empty]

- In the Item List field, enter the item list ID or select the item list from the LOV.
  - Click **View Items**. A pop-up window opens where the items in the item list are displayed.
- Click **Select**. Items or ItemLists that meet your criteria are added to the Item Selection table.

**Figure 7-8 Item Selection Table**

Level	Id	Diff Id	Description
Item List	<a href="#">44020</a>		New List

**Complete the Price Change**

- In the Price Change Maintenance pane, click Apply to create price changes. One price change will be created for each item/location intersection.
  - If the Item Type is Item List, then the item list ID is populated in the item column of the Price Change List MRB with a hyperlink. Click the hyperlink to view the items in the item list.

**Note:** If a price change you apply results in a negative margin for an item/location combination, the New Markup field will be highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

**Figure 7–9 Price Change with Negative Margin Highlighted**

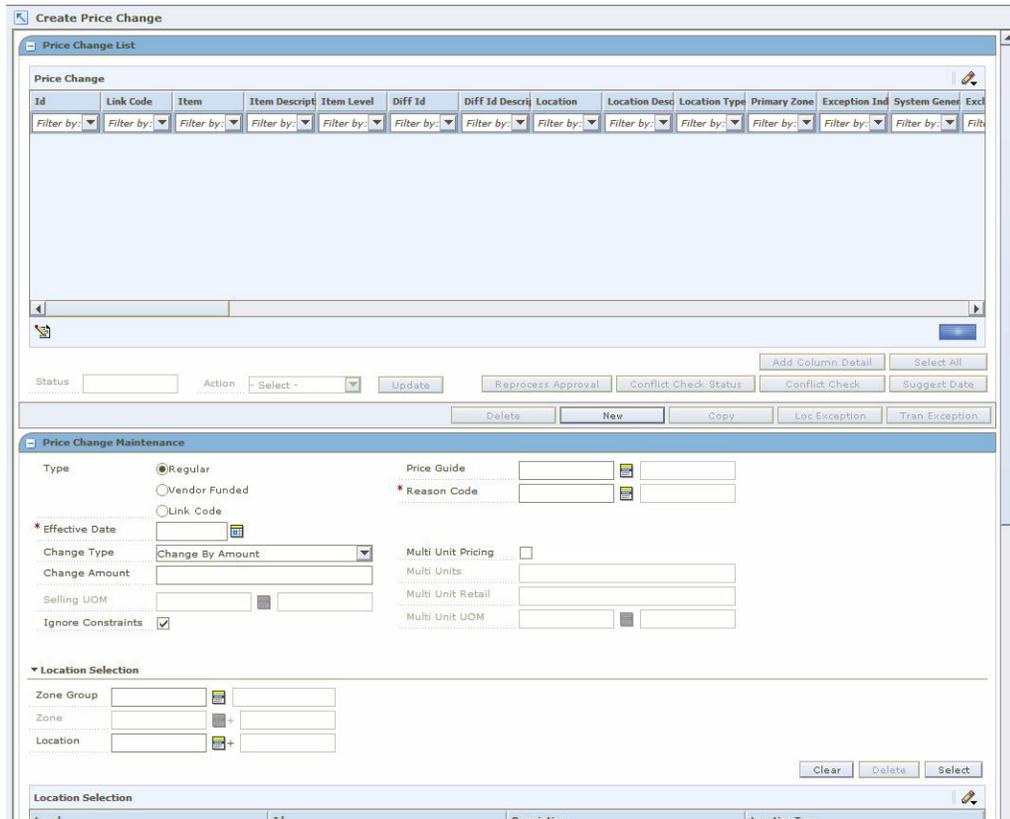
Selling Uf	New Multi-um	New Multi-un	New Multi-Uu	New Cost	Markup Change Date	New Markup %	Price Change	Effective Dat	Reason Code	Currency	Status	Vendor Fundin	Partner Type
				\$50.00		63.6364%	10%	07/30/2008	op_req	USD	Approved		
				\$50.00	07-30-2008	-11.11%	-67.2727%	11/30/2008	reg	USD	Worksheet		
				\$50.00	07-30-2008	74.026%	40%	11/30/2008	reg	USD	Worksheet		

2. Change the status of your price change as appropriate.
3. Click **Done** to save your changes and close the workspace.

## Create a Vendor Funded Price Change

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Changes > Create Price Change. The Create Price Change workspace opens.

Figure 7-10 Create Price Change Window



1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Type field, select Vendor Funded.

Figure 7–11 Price Change Maintenance Window

The screenshot displays the 'Maintain Price Changes' window, which is divided into two main sections: 'Price Change List' and 'Price Change Maintenance'.

**Price Change List:** This section contains a table with the following columns: Id, Link Code, Item, Item Description, Item Level, Diff Id, Diff Id Description, Location, Location Description, Location Type, Primary Zone, Exception Ind, System Generated, Exclusion, Parent Id, and Current. A single row is visible with the following data: Id: 2742, Item: 100820031, Item Description: eee, Item Level: Parent Item..., Diff Id: GREEN, Diff Id Description: Green, Location: 1, Location Description: USD locations, Location Type: Zone.

**Price Change Maintenance:** This section contains a form with the following fields and options:

- Type:** Radio buttons for Regular (selected), Vendor Funded, and Link Code.
- Price Guide:** A text field and a LOV button.
- \* Reason Code:** A text field containing '2' and a LOV button.
- \* Effective Date:** A text field containing '03/03/2012' and a calendar icon.
- Change Type:** A dropdown menu set to 'Change By Amount'.
- Change Amount:** A text field containing '5.00'.
- Selling UOM:** Two text fields.
- Ignore Constraints:** A checked checkbox.
- Multi Unit Pricing:** A checkbox.
- Multi Units:** A text field.
- Multi Unit Retail:** A text field.
- Multi Unit UOM:** Two text fields.

**Location Selection:** Below the form is a table with the following columns: Level, Id, Description, and Location Type. A single row is visible with the following data: Level: Zone, Id: 1, Description: USD locations, Location Type: Zone.

2. In the Effective Date field, enter the date the price change should go into effect, or click the calendar button and select a date.

---

**Note:** The Effective Date you can set depends on the number of days set in the system option Price Change Processing Days. The earliest date price changes can be created is today's date plus the price change processing days. If you have emergency price change permission, Price Change Processing Days will be ignored.

---

3. In the Price Guide field, enter the ID of the price guide you want to apply to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

**Note:** The price guide only applies to the items in the same department as the price guide.

---

4. In the Reason Code field, enter the ID of the reason you are creating the price change, or click the LOV button and select a reason code.

### Select the Vendor and Deal

1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Partner Type drop-down list, select the partner type.
  - Manufacturer

- Distributor
  - Wholesaler
  - Supplier
2. In the Partner field, enter the ID of the partner with the deal, or click the LOV button and select a partner.
  3. In the Deal ID field, enter the ID of the deal, or click the LOV button and select a deal.
  4. In the Deal Detail ID field, enter the ID of the deal details, or click the LOV button and select the deal details.

### Set Up Price Change Type

1. In the Price Change Type field, select the type of price change that is occurring.

---



---

**Note:** If you selected locations with multiple currencies, you can only choose to create a price change by percent or to reset the POS price.

---



---

- **Change By Percent:** A price for an item changed by is a percentage added to or removed from the basis regular retail. The percent of change is determined by the percent entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Change By Amount:** A price for an item is changed by an amount added or removed from the basis regular retail. The amount of change is determined by the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Fixed Price:** The price for the item will be at a specified retail that will be defined in the change amount field.
  - **Reset POS Price:** The item will be recognized on a price change but no change to the retail will occur. When you select, the Change Amount field and Selling UOM field will be disabled.
  - **Exclude:** This field will be available to exclude items or locations only if an exception is pulled off the price change.
2. In the Change Amount field, enter an amount.
  3. If appropriate, define the multi unit pricing for a price change:
    - a. Select the Multi Unit Pricing check box.
    - b. In the Multi Units field, enter the number of units that are part of the price change.
    - c. In the Multi Unit Retail field, enter the new price for the items.
    - d. In the Multi Unit UOM field, enter the ID of the unit of measure that applies to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a unit of measure.

### Select Locations

1. In the location area of the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Location field, enter a location ID, or click the LOV button and select locations.

---



---

**Note:** Only locations on the deal are selectable.

---



---

2. Click **Select**. Locations are added to the table in the Location Selection table.

### Enter Funding Information

1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Funding Type drop-down list, select Percent or Amount.

**Note:** If the selected locations have different currencies, only Percent is available.

2. In the Funding Amount field, enter an amount.

### Select Items

1. In the Item Selection area of the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Item field, enter an item ID, or click the LOV button and select items.

**Note:** Only items on the deal are selectable.

2. Click **Select**. The items appear in the Item Selection table.

### Complete the Price Change

1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, click **Apply** to add all your changes.

**Note:** If a price change you apply results in a negative margin for an item/location combination, the New Markup field will be highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

**Figure 7–12 Price Change with Negative Margin Highlighted**

Selling Unit	New Multi-unit	New Multi-unit	New Multi-unit	New Cost	Markup Change Date	New Markup %	Price Change	Effective Date	Reason Code	Currency	Status	Vendor Fund	Partner Type
				\$50.00		63.6364%	10%	07/30/2008	sp_req	USD	Approved		
				\$50.00	07-30-2008	-11.1111%	-67.2727%	11/30/2008	reg	USD	Worksheet		
				\$50.00	07-30-2008	74.026%	40%	11/30/2008	reg	USD	Worksheet		

2. Change the status of your price change as appropriate.
3. Click **Done** to save your changes and close the workspace.

### Price Change Exclusion

1. Once the price change is completed, highlight and select the items you wish to create an exception for.
2. Click **Location Exception** or the **Tran Exception**.
3. Navigate to location exception LOV or the tran exception LOV and choose the item or location you wish to create an exception for.
4. Navigate to the change type and select Exclude. The location is excluded from the price change. When the change type of exclude is selected, the change amount is disabled.
5. Apply the changes to the record block. The appropriate exclusion/exception flags will result.
6. Approve the price change event.

---

---

**Note:** Location exception and exclusion can be created at Item List level also.

---

---

### Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions

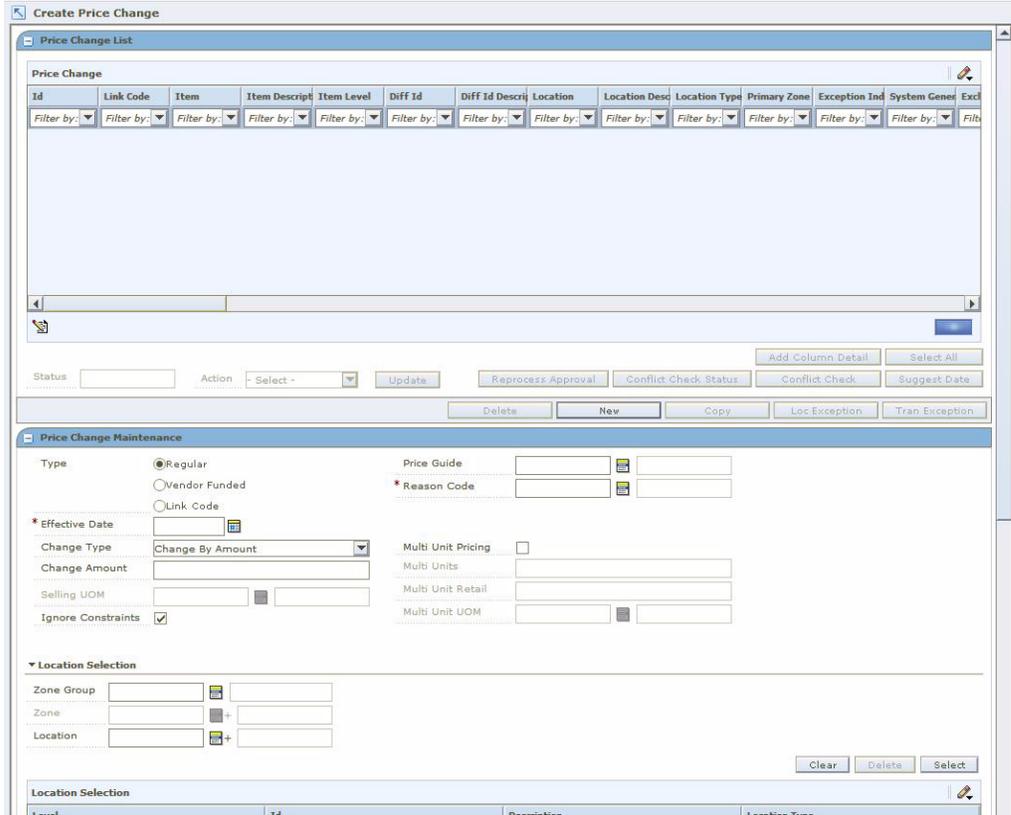
Once a system generated exclusion occurs, the user has the option to fix the item/location data for the exclusion and reprocess the data.

1. Perform the necessary maintenance to fix all or some of the exclusions created.
2. Highlight the exclusion row(s).
3. Click **Reprocess Approval**. Reprocessing will result in one of the following:
  - Exclusions are corrected successfully, resulting in no exclusions needed for the price event. The detail row previously added for exclusions will be removed and all item data will reside under the original component detail.
  - Exclusions are corrected successfully; some have been left by the user as valid exclusions. The detail row will be updated to reflect only the remaining exclusions (not fixed by user). Fixed item exclusions will reside under the original component detail row.
  - Exclusions are corrected unsuccessfully; the detail row will remain without changes for any item/location that does not pass conflict check.

### Create a Link Code Price Change

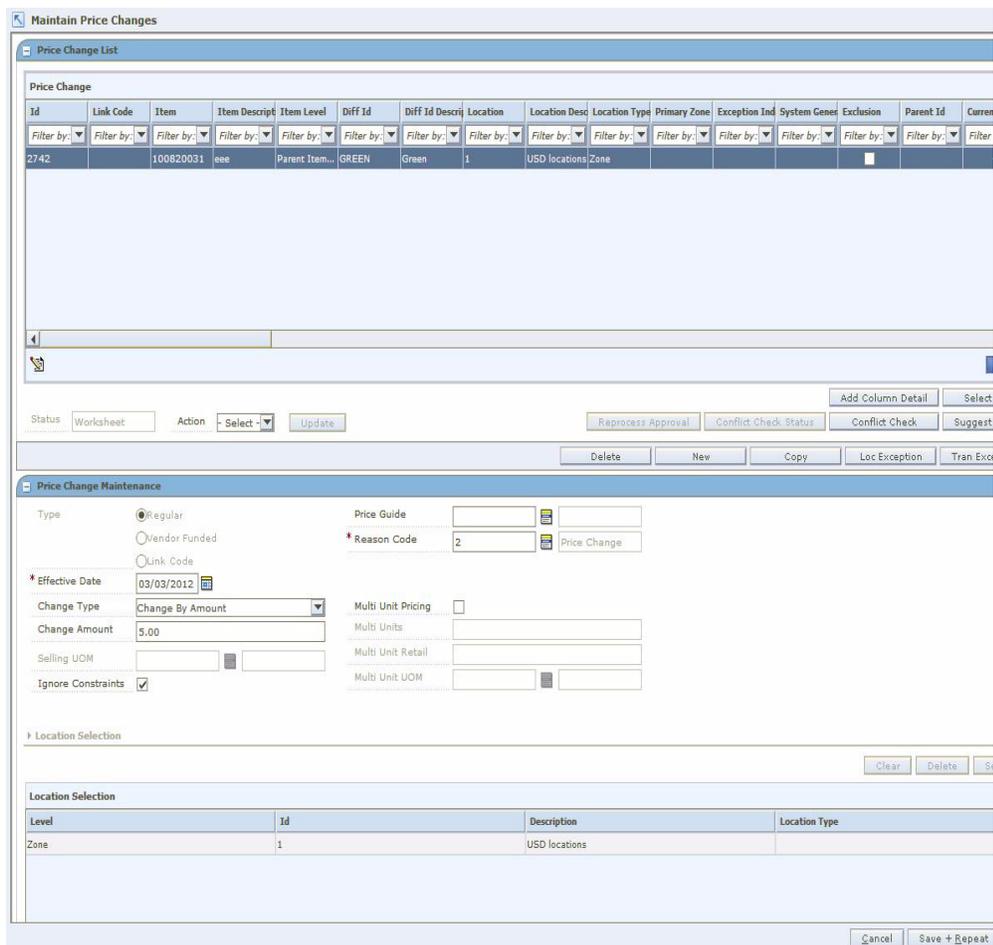
**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Changes > Create Price Change. The Create Price Change workspace opens.

Figure 7-13 Create Price Change Window



- 1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, select Link Code.

**Figure 7–14 Price Change Maintenance Window**



2. In the Effective Date field, enter the date the price change is should go into effect, or click the calendar button and select a date.

**Note:** The Effective Date you can set depends on the number of days set in the system option Price Change Processing Days. The earliest date price changes can be created is the current date plus the price change processing days. If you have emergency price change permission, Price Change Processing Days will be ignored.

3. In the Reason Code field, enter the ID of the reason you are creating the price change, or click the LOV button and select a reason code.

**Select Link Codes**

1. In the Link Code area of the Price Change Maintenance pane, in the Link Code field, enter the ID of the link code, or click the LOV button and select a link code.
2. In the Currency field, enter the currency code, or click the LOV button and select the currency.
3. In the Zone Group field, enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations you want to add to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.

4. In the Zone field, enter the ID of the zone that contains the locations you want to add to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a zone.

---

**Note:** The Zone field is limited by the currency entered in step 2.

---

5. In the Location field, enter the ID of the location that you want to add to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a location.

---

**Note:** You can create price changes at the zone level. Locations are not required.

---

### Set Up Price Change Type

1. In the Change Type field, select Fixed Price. The price for the item will be at a specified retail that will be defined in the change amount field. Link code price changes can only be set up as fixed price.
2. In the Change Amount field, enter an amount.
3. If appropriate, define the multi unit pricing for a price change:
  - a. Select the Multi Unit Pricing check box.
  - b. In the Multi Units field, enter the number of units that are part of the price change.
  - c. In the Multi Unit Retail field, enter the new price for the items.
  - d. In the Multi Unit UOM field, enter the ID of the unit of measure that applies to the price change, or click the LOV button and select a unit of measure.

### Complete the Price Change

1. In the Price Change Maintenance pane, click Apply to add all your changes

---

**Note:** If a price change you apply results in a negative margin for an item/location combination, the New Markup field will be highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

---

2. Change the status of your price change as appropriate.
3. Click **Done** to save your changes and close the workspace.

### Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions

Once a system generated exclusion occurs, the user has the option to fix the item/location data for the exclusion and reprocess the data.

1. Perform the necessary maintenance to fix all or some of the exclusions created.
2. Highlight the exclusion row(s).
3. Click **Reprocess Approval**. Reprocessing will result in one of the following:

- Exclusions are corrected successfully, resulting in no exclusions needed for the price event. The detail row previously added for exclusions will be removed and all item data will reside under the original component detail.
- Exclusions are corrected successfully; some have been left by the user as valid exclusions. the detail row will be updated to reflect only the remaining exclusions (not fixed by user). Fixed item exclusions will reside under the original component detail row.
- Exclusions are corrected unsuccessfully; the detail row will remain without changes for any item/location that does not pass conflict check.

## Change the Status of a Price Change

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Changes > Maintain Price Change. The Price Change Search pane opens.

**Figure 7-15 Price Change Search Window**

1. Search for and retrieve the price change you want to maintain. Your results are displayed in the Price Change List pane.

**Figure 7-16 Price Change List Window**

ID	Link Code	Item	Item Description	Item Level	Diff ID	Diff ID Description	Location	Location Description	Location Type	Primary Zone	Exception Ind	System Code	Exclusion	Parent ID	Status	Current Unit	Current Price
111630		10000175	SYSTEM 0E	Item List			1001	RK LM Store1	Store					111630	Approved	-	-
111632		102108581	PI	Parent Item			1001	RK LM Store1	Store						Approved	-	-
111631		102108645	PI	Transaction ...			1001	RK LM Store1	Store						Approved	-	-

**Note:** If you are in the Create Price Change workspace your price changes are displayed in the Price Change List pane when you click **Apply**. You do not need to open the Maintain Price Change workspace.

2. Select the price change for which you want to change the status.
  - In the table, select a row.
  - Click **Select All**. All records in the Price Change List pane are selected.

3. In the Action field, select the status to which you want to move the price change.
4. Click **Update**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
5. Click **OK**.
  - a. The current price change is displayed in the upper half of the window. Price changes promotions, and/or clearances for the same item/location are displayed in the lower half of the window.
  - b. Click **Cancel** to close the window. See ["Maintain a Price Change"](#) for more information on how to adjust a price change.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Maintain a Price Change

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Price Changes > Maintain Price Change. The Price Change Search window opens.

**Figure 7-17 Price Changes Search Window**

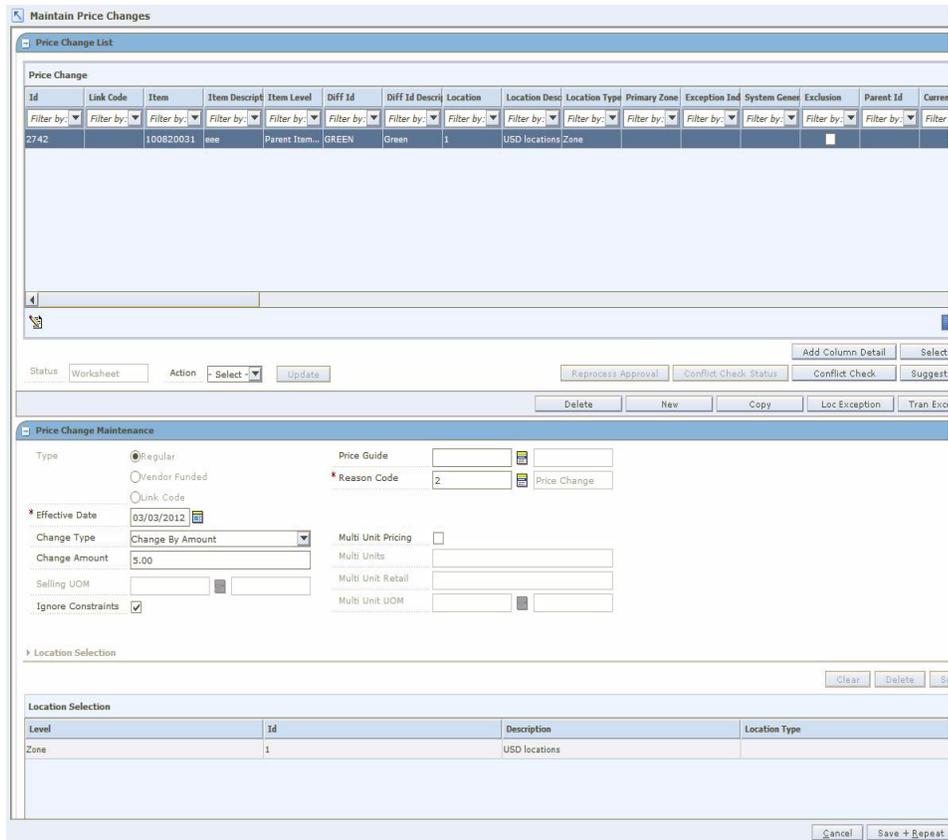
1. Search for and retrieve the price change you want to maintain. Your results appear in the Price Change List pane.

**Figure 7-18 Price Change List Window**

ID	Link Code	Item	Item Description	Item Level	Diff ID	Diff ID Description	Location	Location Description	Location Type	Primary Zone	Exception Ind	System Code	Exclusion	Parent ID	Status	Current Unit Price
111633		102000173	SYSTEM SE...	Item List			1001	RK LM Store1	Store					111632	Approved	-
111632		102100581	PI	Parent Item			1001	RK LM Store1	Store						Approved	-
111631		102100645	PI	Transaction ...			1001	RK LM Store1	Store						Approved	-

2. From the list of results, select the price change you want to maintain. The price change details appear in the Price Change Maintenance pane.

**Figure 7–19 Price Change Maintenance Window**



3. If necessary, change the status of the price change to Worksheet.
4. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.

---

**Note:** You cannot change the items and locations on a price change.

---

5. Click **Apply** to add all any changes.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

### Copy a Price Change

1. From the list of results, select the price change you want to copy.
2. Click **Copy**. The price change details appear in the Price Change Maintenance pane.
3. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.
4. Click **Apply** to add all any changes.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

---

**Note:** Effective dates, exceptions, and status are not copied when copying a price change.

---

### Delete a Price Change

1. From the list of results, select the price change you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
3. Click **Yes**. The price change is deleted.
4. Click **Done** to close the window.

---

---

**Note:** Only price changes with a status of Worksheet can be deleted.

---

---

### Check for Conflicts

1. From the list of results, select the price change you want to check.
2. Click **Conflict Check**.
  - If no conflicts exist, click **OK**.
  - If conflicts exist, you must adjust the details of your price change before you can move the price change to the next status.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

### Suggest a Date

1. From the list of results, select the price change you want to suggest a date for.
2. Click **Suggest Date**. The system runs a check of promotion constraints, then calculates an appropriate date and places it in the effective date field.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

### Create a Location Exception

---

---

**Note:** Location exceptions can only be created for Zone Level price changes.

---

---

1. From the list of results, select the price change.
2. Click **Location Exceptions**. The locations selection area of the Price Change Maintenance pane is enabled.
3. In the Location field, enter the ID of the location where items are different than the zone on the price change, or click the LOV button and select a location in the zone.
4. In the enable price change fields, enter information about the price change for the item/location.

---

---

**Note:** To create a Location Exclusion, select the type Exclude.

---

---

5. Click **Apply** to add any changes.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Create Item Exceptions at the Transaction Level

**Note:** Item exceptions at the transaction level can occur only when the price change was created at the item parent or item parent/diff level.

1. From the list of results, select the price change.
2. Click **Tran Exceptions**. The item selection area of the Price Change Maintenance pane is enabled.
3. In the Item field, enter the ID of the item for which items are different than the parent item on the price change, or click the LOV button and select an item.
4. In the enable price change fields, enter information about the price change for the item.
5. Click **Apply** to add any changes.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Create Price Changes for Area Differentials

**Navigate:** From Task Pad, select Price Changes> Price Changes for Area Differentials. The Price Changes for Area Differentials window opens.

**Figure 7–20 Price Changes for Area Differentials**

Department Id	Department	Class Id	Class	Subclass Id	Subclass	Zone Group	Zone Group Id	Zone	Zone Id	Price Guide
5001	RPM QA Dept...					ZG-AAA	562	Z1-Stores	502	
5001	RPM QA Dept...					STZG-B	1643	Zone1	1368	
5002	RPM QA Dept...					ZG-AAA	562	Z2-Wholesale	503	
5003	RPM QA Dept					STZG-B	1643	Zone1	1368	
8000	Shoes					np zone2	725	548	548	

Zone Id	Zone Name	Differential	Percent	Auto Approve	Price Guide	Create Price Chaj	Effective Date	Create Date	State

Create Price Changes    Effective Date:    

1. Select Primary area from the top Multi-Record Block.

2. Secondary areas for the Primary area will appear in the bottom Multi-Record Block. Select the secondary area you want to create price changes for.
3. Click **Create Price Changes**.
4. Enter an Effective Date.
5. Click **Apply**.



## Creating Clearances

A clearance is designed to move out-of-date merchandise and slow-selling merchandise out of a store. A clearance is considered a permanent price change, and inventory is consequently revalued. Once the reset date for a clearance has passed, the item's price and inventory value is returned to the regular price. The following clearances can be created:

- **Regular:** The clearance is occurring at the retailer's initiative.
- **Vendor Funded:** The supplier is subsidizing a portion of the clearance.

When a clearance is added to RPM, it must go through a series of checks before it can be applied to an item/location. Depending on your user role, you may not be able to move the clearance to the next status. A clearance may be in any of the following statuses:

**Table 8–1** Status of Clearances

Status	Definition
Worksheet	The clearance has been started, but not reviewed or sent out.
Submitted	The clearance has been completed and is pending review. Conflict checking has occurred for the price change.
Approved	The clearance has been reviewed and accepted. The clearance is communicated to the locations for which the clearance is effective.
Executed	The clearance prices established are effective for the item/location.
Rejected	The clearance has been reviewed and declined.

After you create a clearance, you can maintain different aspects of the clearance. You can create exceptions to the items and locations that exist on the clearance, change the specifics of the clearance, and can copy an existing clearance.

There are procedures that allow you to navigate and search for clearances through the Maintain Clearances task on the Task Pad; however, you can accomplish these same tasks after you create a clearance and the clearance opens in the Clearance List pane in the Create Clearance workspace.

## Search for a Clearance

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Clearances > Maintain Clearances. The Maintain Clearances workspace opens.

**Figure 8–1** *Maintain Clearances Window*

The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Clearances' window with a 'Clearance Search' section. The search criteria are as follows:

- Department:** (Empty text field)
- Class:** (Empty text field)
- Subclass:** (Empty text field)
- Item Type:** Item (Dropdown menu)
- Item Level:** Transaction Level Item (Dropdown menu) with a checkbox for 'Search On This Level Only' (unchecked)
- Diff Type:** - Select - (Dropdown menu)
- Item:** (Empty text field)
- Diff:** (Empty text field)
- Clearance Id:** (Empty text field)
- Type:** Regular (Dropdown menu)
- Status:** - Select - (Dropdown menu)
- Created By:** (Empty text field)
- Create Date:** (Empty date field) To (Empty date field)
- Effective Date:** (Empty date field) To (Empty date field)

Below the search criteria, there are sections for 'Location' and 'Advanced Search', both currently collapsed. A 'Clear' button is visible on the right side of the search area, and a 'Cancel' button is at the bottom right of the window.

1. Enter criteria as necessary to restrict the search to the clearances you want to maintain.
2. Click **Search**. Your results appear in the Filtered Results pane.

**Figure 8–2 Filtered Results Pane**

Clearance Id	Item Id	Item Description	Diff Id	Diff Id Description	Zone Group Id	Zone Group Name	Zone Id	Zone Name	Location Id	Location Description	Location Type	Effective Date	Out Of Stock	State	Reorder Point
181881	100024202	test item 17...			1461	1461	1201	1201	1201	1201	Zone	04/13/2009	09/01/2009	Approved	4

3. Select an item and click **Edit**. The Clearance List pane opens.

**Figure 8–3 Clearance List Pane**

Id	Item	Item Description	Item Level	Diff Id	Diff Id Description	Location	Location Description	Location Type	Primary Zone	Exception Ind	Exclusion	Parent Id	Current Unit R	Current Average Cost
181881	100024202	test item 17...	Transaction...			1201	1201	Zone						

## Conflict Checking

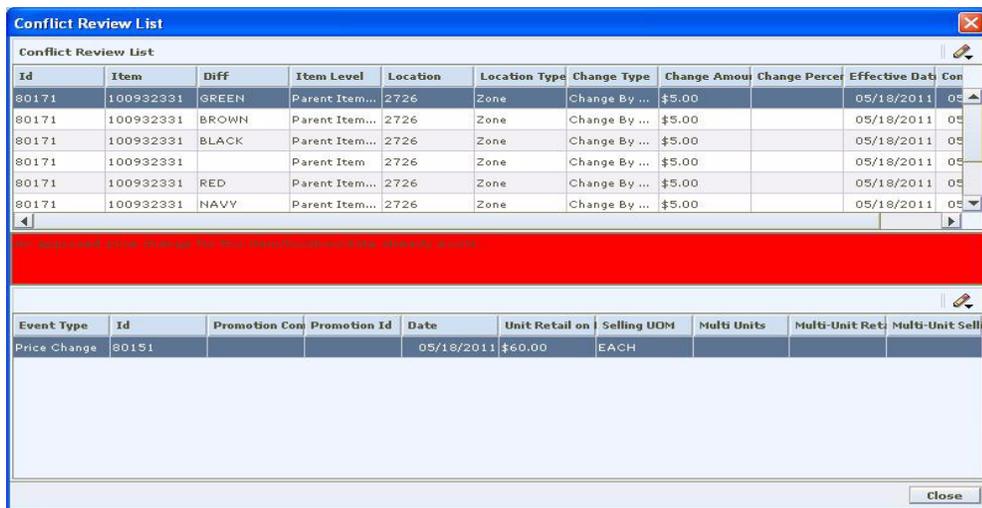
Whenever the status of a price event changes, conflict checking is performed and the conflicts are displayed.

Conflict check is done for the following status only.

- Worksheet to Approved
- Worksheet to Submitted
- Submitted to Approved
- Approved to Worksheet

The existence of any conflict is identified by a binocular icon in the conflicts column of the multi-record block. To review a conflict, click on the binocular icon, the Conflict Review List window opens.

**Figure 8–4 Conflict Review List Window**



If the event type is Price Change or Clearance, the promotion ID and promotion component ID are not displayed. The promotion ID and promotion component ID are displayed if the event type is Promotion.

### Conflict Check Status

In the Clearance Maintenance workspace, click **Conflict Check Status**. The Refresh Status window opens.

**Figure 8–5 Refresh Status Window**

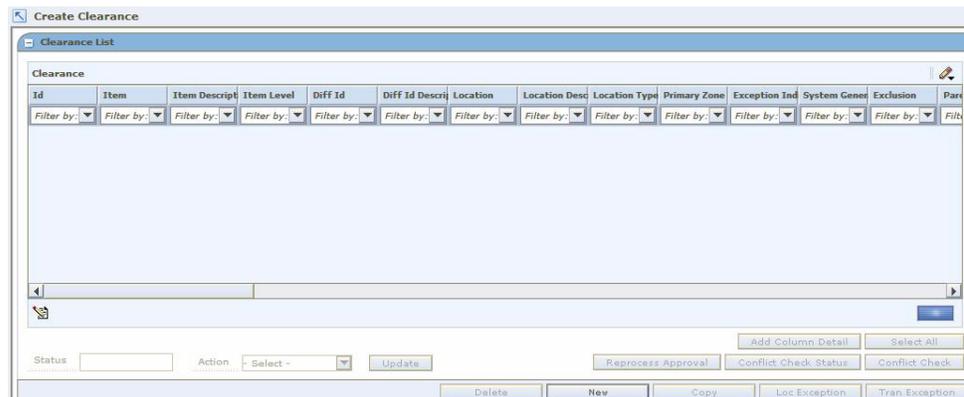


1. Click **Refresh** to update the conflict checking state in the window.
2. Click **Exit** to go back to the price event window.
  - The status in the multi-record block is refreshed.
3. Click **Cancel** to close the status window without making any changes or refreshing the price event.

## Create a Regular Clearance

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Clearances > Create Clearance. The Create Clearance workspace opens.

**Figure 8–6 Create Clearance Window**



1. In the Clearance Maintenance pane, in the Type field, select Regular.

**Figure 8–7 Clearance Maintenance Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Clearance Maintenance' window with the following fields and sections:

- Type:** Radio buttons for 'Regular' (selected) and 'Vendor Funded'.
- Effective Date:** A date input field with a calendar icon.
- Change Type:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Amount Off'.
- Change Amount:** A text input field.
- Price Guide:** A text input field with a LOV icon.
- Reason Code:** A text input field with a LOV icon.
- Out Of Stock Date:** A date input field with a calendar icon.
- Reset Date:** A date input field with a calendar icon.
- Earliest Reset Date:** A date input field.
- Latest Reset Date:** A date input field.
- Apply Subclass Defaults:** A checkbox.
- Location Selection:** A section containing:
  - Zone Group:** A text input field with a LOV icon.
  - Zone:** A text input field with a '+' icon.
  - Location:** A text input field with a '+' icon.
- Clear and Delete:** Two buttons located to the right of the Location Selection section.
- Location Selection Table:** A table with the following columns: Level, Id, Description, Location Type. The table is currently empty.
- Item Selection:** A section containing:
  - Department:** A text input field with a '+' icon.

- In the Effective Date field, enter the date the clearance is enabled, or click the calendar button and select a date.

---

**Note:** The Effective Date you can set depends on the number of days set in the system option Price Change Processing Days. The earliest date clearances can be created is the current date plus the price change processing days, unless you have emergency privileges.

---

- In the Price Guide field, enter the ID of the price guide you want to apply to the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

**Note:** The price guide only applies to the items in the same department as the price guide and locations that share the same currency as the currency on the price guide.

---

- In the Reason Code field, enter the ID of the reason you are creating the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a reason code.
- In the Out of Stock Date field, enter the date you expect the inventory to be consumed, or click the calendar button and select a date.

---

**Note:** Depending on your system settings the date may default.

---

- In the Reset Date field, enter the date the price of the item returns to regular price, or click the calendar button and select a date.

**Note:** Depending on your system settings the date may default.

7. Select Apply Subclass Defaults to attach a Clearance Defaults Pricing Strategy to the clearance.

**Note:** Set up a Clearance Pricing Strategy before creating a clearance. See "[Clearance Defaults Pricing](#)" for complete information on setting up a Clearance Defaults pricing strategy.

### Set Up Clearance Type

1. In the Price Change Type field, select the type of clearance that is occurring.

**Note:** If you selected locations with multiple currencies, you can only choose to create a clearance by percent.

- **Change By Percent:** A price for an item changed by is a percentage added to or removed from the basis retail price. The percent of change is determined by the percent entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Change By Amount:** A price for an item is changed by an amount added or removed from the basis retail price. The amount of change is determined by the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Fixed Price:** The price for the item will be at a specified retail that will be defined in the change amount field.
  - **Exclude:** This field will be available to exclude items or locations only if an exception is pulled off the clearance.
2. In the Change Amount field, enter the amount, percent, or fixed amount for the clearance.

**Note:** There is no need to enter a negative sign before the number entered in the Change Amount field. A clearance can only exist as a decrease in price.

### Select Locations

1. In the Location Selection area, select how you want to add locations to the clearance.

**Figure 8–8** Location Selection Window

Location Selection 			
Level	Id	Description	Location Type

- **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
  - **Location:** Enter the ID of the location to add to the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a location.
2. Click **Select**. Locations that meet your criteria are added to the table in the Location Selection area.

**Select Items**

1. In the Clearance Maintenance pane, in the Item Selection area, select items on the clearance using the available fields.

**Figure 8–9 Item Selection Window**

Item Selection 			
Level	Id	Diff Id	Description

---

**Note:** All fields with LOV buttons allow multiple items to be selected.

---

- To select items from all available items, enter an ID in the Item field, or click the LOV button and select item.
- OR
- Enter information in the enabled fields to limit the items available in the Item field.
    - a. In the Department field, enter a department number, or click the LOV button and select a department.
    - b. In the Class field, enter a class number, or click the LOV button and select a class.
    - c. In the Subclass field, enter a subclass number, or click the LOV button and select a subclass.
    - d. In the Item Type drop-down list, select Item or Item List.

---

**Note:** If you select Item List from the Item Type drop-down list, only item lists will be selectable from the Item field. If you select Item, only single items that conform to the other criteria specified will be selectable.

---

- e. In the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, or Transaction Level Item.

**Note:** The Diff Type and Diff fields are only enabled if Parent Item/Diff is selected.

- f. In the Diff Type drop-down list, select a diff type.
- g. In the Diff drop-down list, select a diff.
- h. In the Item field, click the LOV button and select items.

**Note:** If the Item Type is selected as Item List, the Item Level is defaulted to Item List and the Item Editor defaults to Item List.

**Figure 8–10 Item Selection Pane**

The screenshot shows the 'Item Selection' pane with the following fields and values:

- Department: [Empty]
- Class: [Empty]
- Subclass: [Empty]
- Item Type: Item List
- Item Level: Item List
- Diff Type: - Select -
- Item List: [Empty] [View Items]
- Diff: [Empty]

- i. In the Item List field, enter the item list ID or select the item list from the LOV. Click **View Items**. A pop-up window opens where the items in the item list are displayed.
2. Click **Select**. Items or ItemLists that meet your criteria are added to the Item Selection table.

**Figure 8–11 Item List**

Item Selection			
Level	Id	Diff Id	Description
Item List	<a href="#">44020</a>		New List

- If the Item Type is Item List, then the item list ID is populated in the ID column of the Item Selection MRB as a hyperlink. Click the hyperlink to view the items in the item list.

**Complete the Clearance**

1. Click **Apply** to add any changes.

---



---

**Note:** If any clearance pricing you apply results in a negative margin for an item, fields in the Clearance List pane are highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

---



---

2. Change the status of your clearance as appropriate.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Clearance Exclusion

1. Once the clearance is completed, highlight and select the items you wish to create an exception for.
2. Click **Location Exception** or the **Tran Exception**.
3. Navigate to location exception LOV or the tran exception LOV and choose the item or location you wish to create an exception for.
4. Navigate to the change type and select Exclude. The location is excluded from the clearance. When the change type of exclude is selected, the change amount is disabled.
5. Apply the changes to the record block. The appropriate exclusion/exception flags will result.
6. Approve the clearance.

### Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions

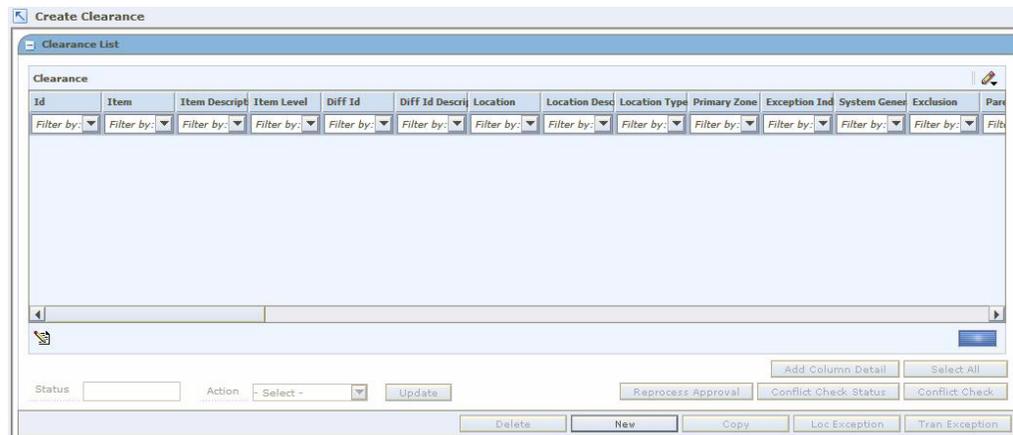
Once a system generated exclusion occurs, the user has the option to fix the item/location data for the exclusion and reprocess the data.

1. Perform the necessary maintenance to fix all or some of the exclusions created.
2. Highlight the exclusion row(s).
3. Click **Reprocess Approval**. Reprocessing will result in one of the following:
  - Exclusions are corrected successfully, resulting in no exclusions needed for the price event. The detail row previously added for exclusions will be removed and all item data will reside under the original component detail.
  - Exclusions are corrected successfully; some have been left by the user as valid exclusions. the detail row will be updated to reflect only the remaining exclusions (not fixed by user). Fixed item exclusions will reside under the original component detail row.
  - Exclusions are corrected unsuccessfully; the detail row will remain without changes for any item/location tat does not pass conflict check.

### Create a Vendor Funded Clearance

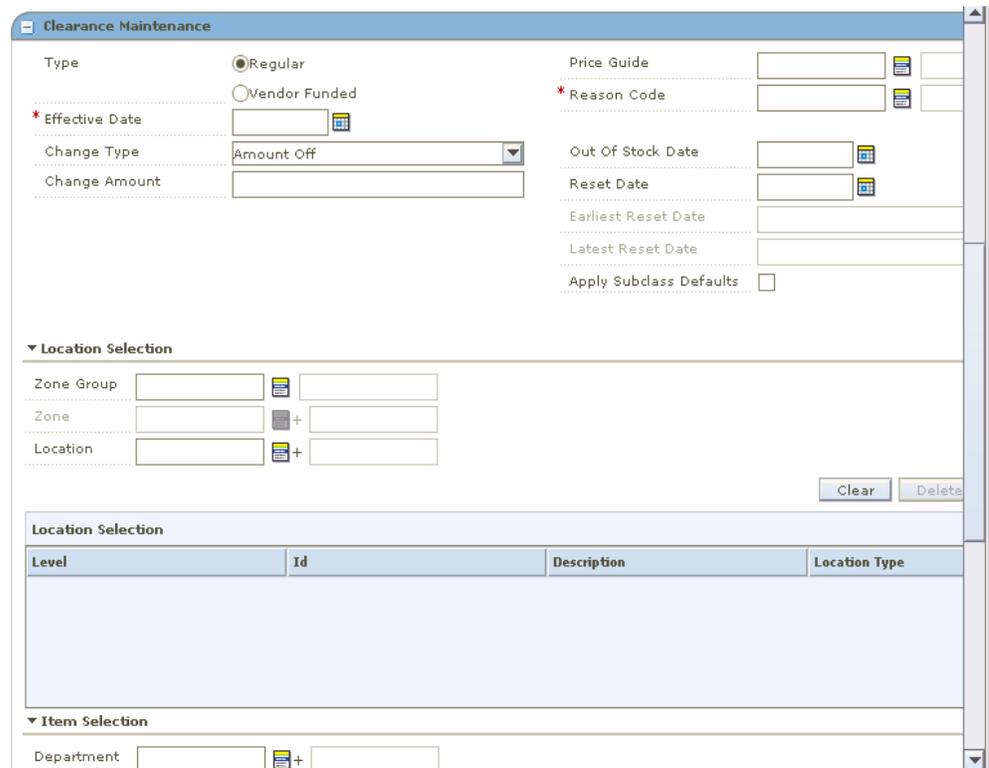
**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Clearances > Create Clearance. The Create Clearance workspace opens.

**Figure 8–12 Create Clearance Window**



1. In the Clearance Maintenance pane, in the Type field, select Vendor Funded.

**Figure 8–13 Clearance Maintenance Window**



2. In the Effective Date field, enter the date the clearance is enabled, or click the calendar button and select a date.

---

**Note:** The Effective Date you can set depends on the number of days set in the system option Price Change Processing Days. The earliest date clearances can be created is the current date plus the price change processing days, unless you have emergency privileges.

---

3. In the Price Guide field, enter the ID of the price guide you want to apply to the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a price guide.

---

---

**Note:** The price guide only applies to the items in the same department as the price guide and locations that share the same currency as the currency on the price guide.

---

---

4. In the Reason Code field, enter the ID of the reason you are creating the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a reason code.
5. In the Out of Stock Date field, enter the date you expect the inventory to be consumed, or click the calendar button and select a date.

---

---

**Note:** Depending on your system settings the date may default.

---

---

6. In the Reset Date field, enter the date the price of the item returns to regular price, or click the calendar button and select a date.

---

---

**Note:** Depending on your system settings the date may default.

---

---

7. Select Apply Subclass Defaults to attach a Clearance Defaults Pricing Strategy to the clearance.

### Select the Vendor and Deal

1. In the Clearance Maintenance pane, in the Partner Type drop-down list, select the partner type.
  - Manufacturer
  - Distributor
  - Wholesaler
  - Supplier
2. In the Partner field, enter the ID of the partner with the deal, or click the LOV button and select a partner.
3. In the Deal ID field, enter the ID of the deal, or click the LOV button and select a deal.
4. In the Deal Detail ID field, enter the ID of the deal details, or click the LOV button and select the deal details.

### Select Locations

1. In the location area of the Clearance Maintenance pane, in the Location field, enter a location ID, or click the LOV button and select locations.

---

---

**Note:** Only locations on the deal are selectable.

---

---

2. Click **Select**. Locations are added to the table in the Location Selection table

### Enter Funding Information

1. In the Clearance Maintenance pane, in the Funding Type drop-down list, select Percent or Amount.

---

---

**Note:** If the selected locations have different currencies, only Percent is available.

---

---

2. In the Funding Amount field, enter an amount.

### Select Items

1. In the Item Selection area of the Clearance Maintenance pane, in the Item field, enter an item ID, or click the LOV button and select items.

---

---

**Note:** Only items on the deal are selectable.

---

---

2. Click **Select**. The items appear in the Item Selection table.

### Complete the Clearance

1. Click **Apply** to add any changes.

---

---

**Note:** If any clearance pricing you apply results in a negative margin for an item, fields in the Clearance List pane are highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

---

---

2. Change the status of your clearance as appropriate.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Change the Status of a Clearance

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Clearances > Maintain Clearances. The Maintain Clearances workspace opens.

**Figure 8–14 Maintain Clearance Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Clearances' window with the following sections:

- Clearance Search:**
  - \* Department: [Text Box] + [Add]
  - Class: [Text Box] + [Add]
  - Subclass: [Text Box] + [Add]
  - Item Type: [Item] (Dropdown)
  - Item Level: [Transaction Level Item] (Dropdown)  Search On This Level Only
  - Diff Type: [- Select -] (Dropdown)
  - \* Item: [Text Box] + [Add]
  - Diff: [Text Box] + [Add]
- Location:** [Section Header]
- Advanced Search:** [Section Header]
- Clearance Details:**
  - \* Clearance Id: [Text Box]
  - Type: [Regular] (Dropdown)
  - Status: [- Select -] (Dropdown)
  - Created By: [Text Box] + [Add]
  - Create Date: [Text Box] To [Text Box] (Date Range)
  - Effective Date: [Text Box] To [Text Box] (Date Range)

Buttons: [Clear] (top right), [Cancel] (bottom right)

1. Search for and retrieve the clearance you want to maintain. Your results appear in the Clearance List pane.

**Figure 8–15 Clearance List Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Clearance List' window with a table of results. The table has the following columns and data:

Id	Item	Item Description	Item Level	Diff Id	Diff Id Description	Location	Location Description	Location Type	Primary Zone	Exception Ind	Exclusion	Parent Id	Current Unit R	Current Average Cu
181881	100024202	test item 17...	Transaction ...			1201	1201	Zone			<input type="checkbox"/>			

Buttons: [Select All] (top right), [Status: Approved] (bottom left), [Action: - Select -] (bottom left), [Update] (bottom left), [Conflict Check Status] (bottom right), [Conflict Check] (bottom right), [Delete] (bottom center), [New] (bottom center), [Copy] (bottom center), [Loc Exception] (bottom center), [Tran Exception] (bottom center)

---

**Note:** If you are in the Create Clearance workspace, your clearances appear in the Price Change List pane when you click **Apply**. You do not need to open the Maintain Price Change workspace.

---

2. Select the price change for which you want to change the status.
  - a. In the table, select a row.
  - b. Click **Select All**. All records in the Clearance List pane are selected.
3. In the Action field, select the status to which you want to move the clearance.
4. Click **Update**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
5. Click **OK**.
  - a. The current clearance opens in the upper half of the window. Price changes, promotions, and clearances affecting the same item/location appear in the lower half of the window.
  - b. Click **Close** to close the conflict review list. The [Maintain a Clearance](#) contains additional information on how to adjust a clearance.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Maintain a Clearance

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Clearances > Maintain Clearances. The Maintain Clearances workspace opens.

**Figure 8–16** *Maintain Clearance Window*

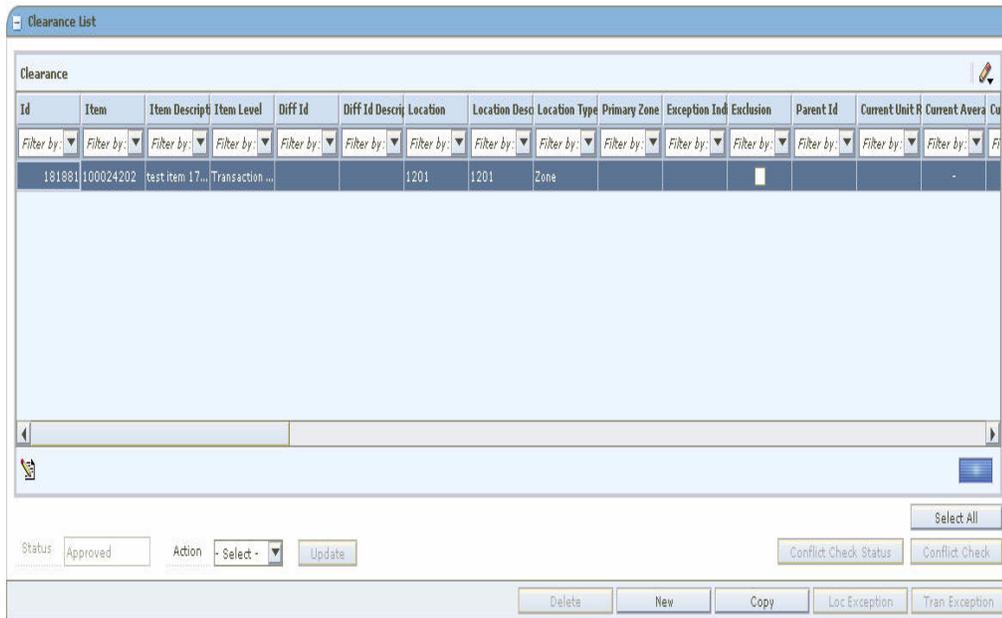
The screenshot shows the 'Maintain Clearances' window with the following fields and options:

- Clearance Search**
  - \* Department: [Text Field] + [Add Icon]
  - Class: [Text Field] + [Add Icon]
  - Subclass: [Text Field] + [Add Icon]
  - Item Type: [Item] (Dropdown)
  - Item Level: [Transaction Level Item] (Dropdown)  Search On This Level Only
  - Diff Type: [- Select -] (Dropdown)
  - \* Item: [Text Field] + [Add Icon]
  - Diff: [Text Field] + [Add Icon]
- \* Clearance Id: [Text Field]
- Type: [Regular] (Dropdown)
- Status: [- Select -] (Dropdown)
- Created By: [Text Field] + [Add Icon]
- Create Date: [Text Field] To [Text Field]
- Effective Date: [Text Field] To [Text Field]

Below the search fields are sections for **Location** and **Advanced Search**. At the bottom right, there are 'Clear' and 'Cancel' buttons.

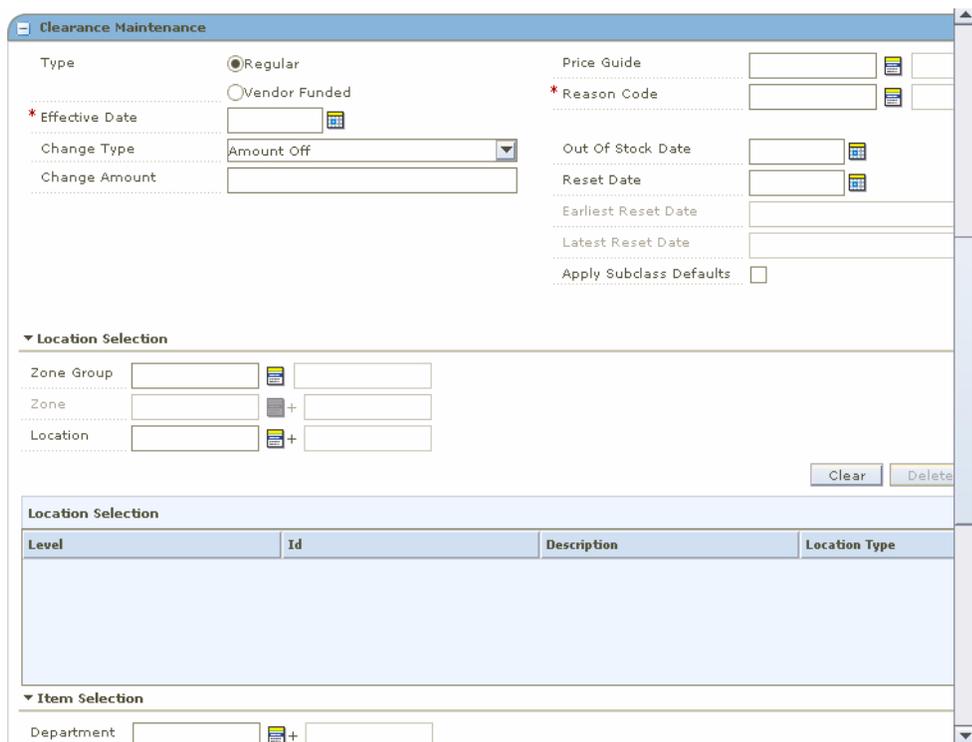
1. Search for and Retrieve the clearance you want to maintain. Your results appear in the Clearance List pane.

**Figure 8–17 Clearance List Window**



2. From the list of results, select the clearance you want to maintain. The clearance details appear in the Clearance Maintenance pane.

**Figure 8–18 Clearance Maintenance Window**



3. If necessary, change the status of the price change to Worksheet.
4. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.

---

---

**Note:** You cannot change the items and locations on a clearance.

---

---

5. Click **Apply** to add all any changes.

---

---

**Note:** If the clearance pricing you apply results in a negative margin for an item, fields in the Clearance List pane are highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

---

---

6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

### Copy a Clearance

1. From the list of results, select the clearance you want to copy.
2. Click **Copy**. The clearance details appear in the Clearance Maintenance pane.
3. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.
4. Click **Apply** to add all any changes.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

### Delete a Clearance

1. From the list of results, select the clearance you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.

---

---

**Note:** Only clearances in Deleted status can be deleted.

---

---

3. Click **Yes**. The clearance is deleted.
4. Click **Done** to close the window.

### Check for Conflicting Clearance

1. From the list of results, select the clearance you want to check.
2. Click **Conflict Check**.
  - If no conflicts exist, click **OK**.
  - If conflicts exist, you must adjust the details of your clearance before you can move the clearance to the next status.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Create a Location Exception

---

---

**Note:** Location exceptions can only be created for Zone Level clearances.

---

---

1. From the list of results, select the clearance.
2. Click **Location Exceptions**. The locations selection area of the Clearance Maintenance pane is enabled.
3. In the Location field, enter the ID of the location where items are different than the zone on the clearance, or click the LOV button and select a location.
4. In the enabled clearance fields, enter information about the clearance for the item/location.

---

---

**Note:** To create a Location Exclusion, select the type Exclude.

---

---

5. Click **Apply** to add any changes.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Create Item Exceptions at the Transaction Level

---

---

**Note:** Item exceptions at the transaction level can occur only when the clearance was created at the item parent or item parent/diff level.

---

---

1. From the list of results, select the clearance.
2. Click **Tran Exceptions**. The item selection area of the Clearance Maintenance pane is enabled.
3. In the Item field, enter the ID of the item for which items are different than the parent item on the clearance, or click the LOV button and select an item.
4. In the enabled clearance fields, enter information about the clearance for the item/location.
5. Click **Apply** to add any changes.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Create Clearance Resets

Clearance resets can be created independent of a clearance markdown. You can create a clearance reset for a location while creating a clearance record for the zone-level. You can also create a location-level clearance reset for an executed zone-level markdown.

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Clearances > Create Clearance Resets. The Create Clearance Resets workspace opens.

**Figure 8–19 Create Clearance Resets**

1. In the Reset Date field, enter the date to specify the day that the item or location’s unit retail should be reset to its regular unit retail, or click the calendar button and select a date.
2. In the Item Selection area, select items on the clearance resets using the available fields.

**Figure 8–20 Items Selection Area**

**Note:** All fields with LOV buttons allow multiple selections.

1. In the Department field, enter a department number, or click the LOV button and select a department.

2. In the Class field, enter a class number, or click the LOV button and select a class.
3. In the Subclass field, enter a subclass number, or click the LOV button and select a subclass.
4. In the Item Type drop-down list, select Item or Item List.

---



---

**Note:** If you select Item List from the Item Type drop-down list, only item lists will be selectable from the Item field. If you select Item, only single items that conform to the other criteria specified will be selectable.

---



---

5. In the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, or Transaction Level Item.

---



---

**Note:** The Diff Type and Diff fields are only enabled if Parent Item/Diff is selected.

---



---

6. In the Diff Type drop-down list, select a diff type.
  7. In the Item field, enter the item ID or click the LOV button and select the item.
  8. In the Diff field, enter the diff ID or click the LOV button and select the diff.
3. Click **Select**. Items or ItemLists that meet your criteria are added to the Item Selection table.
  4. In the Location Selection area, select how you want to add locations to the clearance resets.
    - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the clearance reset, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
    - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone to add to the clearance reset, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
    - **Location:** Enter the ID of the location that you want to add to the clearance reset, or click the LOV button and select a location.

---



---

**Note:** You can create clearance resets at the zone or location level.

---



---

5. Click **Select**. The zones and/or locations that meet your criteria are added to the table in the Location Selection table.
6. Click **Apply** to create clearance resets. One clearance reset is be created for each item/location intersection, the records are be displayed at the Parent or Transaction level/Location level.
7. Select a record and Click **Approve** to update the clearance reset record.
  - Click **Select All** to select all records.

## Clearance Resets Inquiry

Clearance resets can be searched upon using the item or location criteria. The lowest definable level by which you can search for a clearance reset is a subclass/zone.

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Clearances > Clearance Resets Inquiry. The Clearance Resets Inquiry workspace opens.

**Figure 8–21 Clearance Resets Inquiry**

---

**Note:** All fields with LOV buttons allow multiple selections.

---

1. In the Department field, enter a department number, or click the LOV button and select a department.
2. In the Class field, enter a class number, or click the LOV button and select a class.
3. In the Subclass field, enter a subclass number, or click the LOV button and select a subclass.
4. In the Zone Group field, enter the ID of the zone group that contains the locations to add to the clearance reset, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
5. In the Zone field, enter the ID of the zone to add to the clearance reset, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
6. In the Location field, enter the ID of the location that you want to add to the clearance reset, or click the LOV button and select a location.
7. In the Item Type drop-down list, select Item or Item List.

---

**Note:** If you select Item List from the Item Type drop-down list, only item lists will be selectable from the Item field. If you select Item, only single items that conform to the other criteria specified will be selectable.

---

8. In the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, or Transaction Level Item.

---

**Note:** The Diff Type and Diff fields are only enabled if Parent Item/Diff is selected.

---

9. In the Diff Type drop-down list, select a diff type.
10. In the Item field, enter the item ID or click the LOV button and select the item.
11. In the Diff field, enter the diff ID or click the LOV button and select the diff.
8. Click **Retrieve Clearance Resets**. Your results appear in the Clearance Resets Results table.

---

---

## Promotions

A promotion is a temporary reduction in price. In addition, you can track sales at one or more locations for a given time period as well as track the sales of merchandise with no price reductions, at given locations for a set time period.

Updates can be made to the details of an existing promotion and promotion components can be added to an existing promotion.

### Promotion Components

The following are the promotion components that RPM mainly focuses on.

**Simple Component:** A simple promotion component consists of an item, item group, or merchandise level that receives a discount at a specific location or group of locations when the customer purchases an item.

**Threshold Component:** A threshold promotion component consists of an item, item group, or merchandise level that receives a discount at a location or group of locations when the customer purchases a quantity or a amount of an item. You must define the threshold levels before you can create the threshold component.

**Multi-Buy Component:** A multi-buy promotion component consists of an item, item group, or merchandise level. You can define the quantity of items or amount of purchase required for the customer to receive a discount or reward. For example, a promotion might include a reward of a third pair of shoes free with the purchase of any two pair of shoes from selected items or item groups. Another promotion might allow purchase of any five items from selected item groups at a fixed price or discount. See ["Examples of Multi-Buy Components"](#) for more detailed examples.

Changes can be made to the details of a promotion component, and new details can be added to promotion components.

In the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane, records that contain item/location exceptions or exclusions are indicated by a down arrow. Records that are item/location exceptions or exclusions are indicated by an up arrow.

Existing promotion components can be copied into a new promotion.

**Finance Component:** The finance component consists of the type of the credit card, index number of the card issuing bank, threshold details, items that will be included or excluded for promotion, and so on.

### Add Funding Information to a Promotion

Funding is added to a promotion at the component level so that you can indicate the vendor that is contributing to the promotion. If you choose to create deals, based on

the funded component, you must indicate the billing information for the deal. If the promotion is associated with an existing deal, the billing information defaults from the existing deal.

## Create a Promotion

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotion > Create Promotion.

OR

From the Maintain Promotion Events workspace, click **New Promotion**.

The Create Promotion workspace opens.

**Figure 9–1 Create Promotion**

The screenshot displays the 'Create Promotion' workspace. It is divided into two main sections: 'Promotion Header' and 'Promotion Components'.

**Promotion Header:** This section contains several input fields and controls:

- \* Promotion:** A text field containing '16061' and a red asterisk icon.
- Description:** A large text area.
- Event:** A text field with a LOV (List of Values) button.
- \* Currency:** A dropdown menu showing 'USD' and 'US Dollar'.
- \* Start Date:** A date picker field.
- End Date:** A date picker field.
- Status:** A dropdown menu showing 'Worksheet'.
- Secondary Application of Discounts:** A checkbox.
- Comments:** A speech bubble icon.
- Referenced Deals:** A button and a text field showing 'Referenced Deals: None'.

**Promotion Components:** This section is a table with the following columns: Component Id, Component Name, Type, Status, Secondary Application, and Conflicts. The table is currently empty. Below the table are several buttons: Conflict Check, Add Component, Create from Existing, Delete, and Edit.

1. In the Promotion field, enter the name of the promotion.
2. In the Description field, enter additional information as necessary.
3. In the Start Date field, enter the day the promotion begins.
4. In the End Date field, enter the day the promotion stops.
5. In the Event field, enter the ID of the event you want to associate with the promotion, or click the LOV button and select an event.
6. Update the Currency field as necessary.
7. Select Secondary Application of Discounts as necessary.
8. Click one of the following:
  - Click **Cancel** to go back to the Create Component workspace without saving the promotion details.
  - Click **Save + Repeat** to save the promotion and add a new promotion.

- Click **Done** to save the promotion details and go back to the Create Component workspace.

## Conflict Checking

Whenever the status of a price event changes, conflict checking is performed and the conflicts are displayed.

Conflict check is done for the following status only.

- Worksheet to Approved
- Worksheet to Submitted
- Submitted to Approved
- Approved to Worksheet

The existence of any conflict is identified by a binocular icon in the conflicts column of the multi-record block. To review a conflict, click on the binocular icon, the Conflict Review List window opens.

**Figure 9–2 Conflict Review List Window**

The screenshot shows a window titled "Conflict Review List" with a table of conflict details. Below the table is a red banner with a warning message, and another table with summary information.

Conflict Review List										
Conflict Review List										
Id	Promotion Comp	Promotion Id	Item	Diff	Item Level	Location	Location Type	Change Type	Change Amou	Chan
25404	6111	6191	100699162	RED	Parent Item/Diff	11111	Store	Fixed Price	\$80.00	
25404	6111	6191	100699162	GRAY	Parent Item/Diff	11111	Store	Fixed Price	\$80.00	
25404	6111	6191	100699162	WHITE	Parent Item/Diff	11111	Store	Fixed Price	\$80.00	
25404	6111	6191	100699162	BLACK	Parent Item/Diff	11111	Store	Fixed Price	\$80.00	
25404	6111	6191	100699162	GREEN	Parent Item/Diff	11111	Store	Fixed Price	\$80.00	
25404	6111	6191	100699162	YELLOW	Parent Item/Diff	11111	Store	Fixed Price	\$80.00	

**Warning:** The Promotion Component Detail does not have a fixed price detail.

Event Type	Id	Promotion Comp	Promotion Id	Date	Unit Retail on	Selling UOM	Multi Units	Multi-Unit Ret	Multi-Unit Sell

If the event type is Promotion, the promotion ID and promotion component ID are displayed. In case of Price Change and Clearance, the promotion ID and promotion component ID are not displayed.

## Conflict Check Status

In the Maintenance workspace, click **Conflict Check Status**. The Refresh Status window opens.

**Figure 9–3 Refresh Status Window**

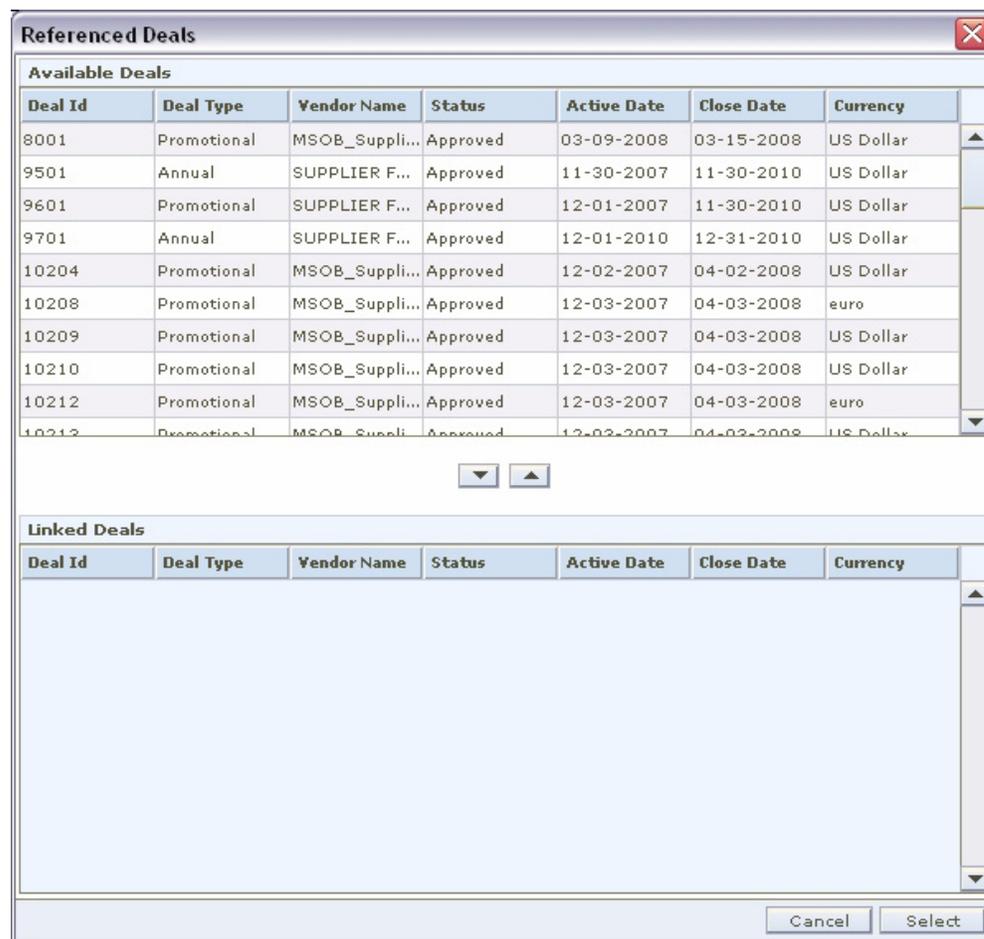


1. Click **Refresh** to update the conflict checking state in the window.
2. Click **Exit** to go back to the price event window.
  - The status in the multi-record block is refreshed.
3. Click **Cancel** to close the status window without making any changes or refreshing the price event.

### **Associate a Deal with a Promotion**

1. Click **Referenced Deals**. The Referenced Deals window opens.

Figure 9–4 Referenced Deals Window



2. Select the deals you want to add to the promotion.
3. Click **Select**. The window closes.
4. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

### Add Components to a Promotion

1. In the Promotion Components pane, click **Add Component**. The Create Component workspace opens.

**Figure 9–5 Create Component Window**

The screenshot shows a web-based form titled "Create Component" with a sub-header "Promotion Component". The form includes the following fields and controls:

- Promotion:** Text input field containing "9083" and a small icon.
- Start Date:** Date picker field showing "01/11/2010".
- End Date:** Date picker field showing "01/18/2010".
- Component:** Text input field containing "9203".
- Component Type:** A dropdown menu currently showing "- Select -".
- Description:** A text input field with an asterisk indicating it is required.
- Customer Type:** A text input field with a small icon (LOV button) to its right.

Navigation and action buttons are located at the bottom of the window:

- Next:** A button located in the top right corner of the form area.
- Cancel, Save, Save + Repeat, Done:** A row of four buttons located at the bottom center of the window.

2. In the Component Type field, select one of the following components:
  - Simple
  - Threshold
  - Multi-Buy
  - Finance
3. In the Description field, enter the description of the promotion component.
4. In the Customer Type field, enter the ID of the customer type, or click the LOV button and select the customer type. This field is optional.
5. Click one of the following:
  - Click **Cancel** to go back to the Promotion Header screen.
  - Click **Save** to save the changes.
  - Click **Save + Repeat** to save the changes and create another component type.
  - Click **Done** to save the changes and go back to the Promotion Header screen.
6. Click **Next**. The Promotion Component Detail Creation screen opens.

Figure 9–6 Promotion Component Detail Creation Window

**Item Selection**

Department

Class

Subclass

Item Type

Item Level

Diff Type

Item

Diff

Level	Id	Diff Id	Description

**Location Selection**

Zone Group

Zone

Store

### Select Items

1. In the Item Selection area, select items on the price change using the available fields.

---

**Note:** All fields with LOV buttons allow multiple selections.

---

To select items from all available items, enter an ID in the Item field, or click the LOV button and select item.

Or

- a. Enter information in the enabled fields to limit the items available in the Item field.
  - In the Department field, enter a department number, or click the LOV button and select a department.
  - In the Class field, enter a class number, or click the LOV button and select a class.
  - In the Subclass field, enter a subclass number, or click the LOV button and select a subclass.
  - In the Item Type drop-down list, select Item or Item List.

**Note:** If you select Item List from the Item Type drop down, only item lists will be selectable from the Item field. If you select Item, only single items that conform to the other criteria specified will be selectable.

- In the Item Level drop-down list, select Parent Item, Parent Item/Diff, Transaction Level Item, or Merchandise Hierarchy when you select Item from the Item Type drop-down list. Select ItemList or Item when you select ItemList from the Item Type drop-down list.

**Note:** The Diff Type and Diff fields are only enabled if Parent Item/Diff is selected.

- In the Diff Type drop-down list, select a diff type.
  - In the Diff drop-down list, select a diff.
2. In the Item field, click the LOV button and select items.

**Note:** If the Item Type is selected as Item List, the Item Level is defaulted to Item List and the Item Editor defaults to Item List.

**Figure 9–7 Item Selection Pane**

The screenshot shows the 'Item Selection' pane with the following fields and controls:

- Department:** A text input field with a LOV icon and a plus sign to its right.
- Class:** A text input field with a LOV icon and a plus sign to its right.
- Subclass:** A text input field with a LOV icon and a plus sign to its right.
- Item Type:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'Item List'.
- Item Level:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'Item List'.
- Diff Type:** A dropdown menu currently showing '- Select -'.
- Item List:** A text input field with a LOV icon and a plus sign to its right, followed by a 'View Items' button.
- Diff:** A text input field with a LOV icon and a plus sign to its right.

3. In the Item List field, enter the item list ID or select the item list from the LOV.
  - Click **View Items**. A pop-up window opens where the items in the item list are displayed.
4. Click **Select**. Items or ItemLists that meet your criteria are added to the Item Selection table.

**Figure 9–8 Item Selection Table**

Item Selection			
Level	Id	Diff Id	Description
Item List	<a href="#">44020</a>		New List

- If the Item Type is Item List, then the item list ID is populated in the ID column of the Item Selection MRB as a hyperlink. Click the hyperlink to view the items in the item list.
- 5. In the Location Selection area, filter and select the locations to be included..
- 6. Click **Select**. The locations are added to the Location Selection table.
- 7. In the Change Type field, select the price change that occurs during the promotion:
  - Amount Off: The items are reduced in price by the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - Exclude: The selected items are not be affected by price changes that occur as a result of the promotion.
  - Fixed Price: The items are priced at the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - No Change: The item prices are not changed. For reporting purposes, the selected items are recognized as being on promotion.
  - Percent Off: The items are reduced in price by the percentage entered in the Change Amount field.
- 8. In the Change Amount field, enter the amount off, percent off, or fixed price.

---



---

**Note:** Do not enter a negative sign before the number entered in the Change Amount field. The amount entered is assumed to be a decrease in price.

---



---

- 9. Enter or select a value in the Selling UOM field (Optional for a Fixed Price change.) If you leave this field blank, the selling unit of measure will default to the current selling unit of measure for the items/location combination. (The Selling UOM field is only active for a Fixed Price change.)

---



---

**Note:** If you do not specify a Selling UOM value, and the selected items do not all have the same selling unit of measure, UOM validation is moved to conflict checking engine.

---



---

- 10. Update the Start Date & Time and End Date & Time fields if you want this promotion component to use start and end times different from those of the promotion.
- 11. In the Apply To field, select the types of item pricing to which you want to apply the promotion component:
  - Clearance Only
  - Regular Only

- Regular and Clearance
12. If you want to apply a price guide to this promotion component, enter the price guide in the Price Guide field or click the LOV button and select the price guide.
  13. Select the Ignore Constraints check box to override any constraints that apply to this promotion.
  14. Click **Apply**. The promotion is displayed in the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane.

---

---

**Note:** If a promotion component that you apply results in a negative margin for an item, fields in the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance list are highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

---

---

15. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Click **Cancel** to go back to the Create Promotion screen.
  - Click **Save** to save the promotion component.
  - Click **Save + Repeat** to save the promotion component and add another component.
  - Click **Done** to save the promotion component and close the workspace.

## Copy Components to a New Promotion

1. In the Promotion Components pane, select the components you want to copy to a new promotion.
2. Click **Copy to New**. A dialog opens for you to enter details about the new promotion you want to create.
3. In the Description field, enter a description of the new promotion.
4. In the Start Date field, enter or select the start date of the new promotion.
5. In the End Date field, enter or select the end date of the new promotion (Optional).
6. To associate the new promotion with an event, enter or select the event in the Event field (Optional).
7. Click **Create**. The Create Promotion workspace opens. The header information is copied into the Promotion Header pane, and the selected components are copied into the Promotion Components pane.

---

---

**Note:** If funding exists for the copied components, you will be asked if you want to copy the funding information.

---

---

8. Create the new promotion.

## Create from an Existing Promotion Component

1. Click **Create from Existing**. The Copy dialog opens.

**Figure 9–9 Copy Dialog**

The screenshot shows a 'Copy' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- \* Promotion:** [Empty text box]
- \* Component:** [Empty text box]
- Component Type:** - Select -
- Start Date:** 08/14/2008
- End Date:** 08/21/2008

Buttons: Copy, Cancel

2. In the Department field, enter or select the department that participated in the promotion (Optional.) You can use this field to narrow the choices in the list of values in the Promotion field.
3. In the Promotion field, enter or select the ID with which the component is associated.
4. In the Component field, enter or select the ID of the component you want to copy.
5. Update the Start and End Date fields as necessary.
6. Click **Copy**. The component is added to the Promotion Components table.

## Search for a Promotion

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotions > Maintain Promotion. The Promotions Search workspace opens.

**Figure 9–10 Promotion Search Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Promotion Search Criteria' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- \* Department:** [Empty text box]
- Class:** [Empty text box]
- Subclass:** [Empty text box]
- Item Type:** Item
- Item Level:** Transaction Level Item
- Diff Type:** - Select -
- \* Item:** [Empty text box]
- Diff:** [Empty text box]
- \* Promotion Id:** [Empty text box]
- Event:** [Empty text box]
- Status:** - Select -
- Start Date:** [Empty text box] To [Empty text box]
- End Date:** [Empty text box] To [Empty text box]
- Created By:** [Empty text box]
- Create Date:** [Empty text box] To [Empty text box]

Buttons: Clear, Search

1. Enter or select the criteria to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. Promotions that match these criteria appear in the Promotion Search Results pane.

## Maintain a Promotion

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotions > Maintain Promotion. The Promotions Search workspace opens.

**Figure 9–11** Promotion Search Window

The screenshot shows a 'Promotion Search Criteria' window with the following fields and options:

- Department:** Text input field with a calendar icon and a plus sign.
- Class:** Text input field with a plus sign.
- Subclass:** Text input field with a plus sign.
- Item Type:** Dropdown menu with 'Item' selected.
- Item Level:** Dropdown menu with 'Transaction Level Item' selected and a checkbox for 'Search On This Level Only'.
- Diff Type:** Dropdown menu with '- Select -' selected.
- Item:** Text input field with a calendar icon and a plus sign.
- Diff:** Text input field with a plus sign.
- Promotion Id:** Text input field.
- Event:** Text input field with a calendar icon.
- Status:** Dropdown menu with '- Select -' selected.
- Start Date:** Text input field with a calendar icon, followed by 'To' and another text input field with a calendar icon.
- End Date:** Text input field with a calendar icon, followed by 'To' and another text input field with a calendar icon.
- Created By:** Text input field with a calendar icon.
- Create Date:** Text input field with a calendar icon, followed by 'To' and another text input field with a calendar icon.
- Location:** Section with a right-pointing arrow and a horizontal line below it.
- Advanced Search:** Section with a right-pointing arrow and a horizontal line below it.
- Buttons:** 'Clear' and 'Search' buttons at the bottom right of the criteria section; 'Cancel' button at the bottom right of the results section.

1. Search for a promotion.
2. In the Promotion Search Results pane, select the promotion you want to edit.
3. Click **Edit**. The Maintain Promotion workspace opens.

Figure 9–12 Maintain Promotion Window

Promotion Header

<b>* Promotion</b>	13821	<b>* TV20080529A</b>	Comments	<b>* Start Date</b>	06/01/2005 12:01 AM
<b>Description</b>	TV20080529A			<b>End Date</b>	06/30/2005 11:59 PM
<b>Event</b>	<input type="text"/>				
<b>* Currency</b>	USD	US Dollar			
<input type="button" value="Referenced Deals"/> Referenced Deals: None				<b>Status</b>	Worksheet
<input type="checkbox"/> Secondary Application of Discounts					

Promotion Components

Component Id	Component Name	Type	Status	Secondary Application	Conflicts
16941	TV20080529A-1-S	Simple	Worksheet	<input type="checkbox"/>	
16961	TV20080529A-2-MB	Multi-Buy	Worksheet	<input type="checkbox"/>	
17181	sdfsef	Multi-Buy	Worksheet	<input type="checkbox"/>	
17322	jfallkfdfa	Multi-Buy	Worksheet	<input type="checkbox"/>	

4. In the Promotion Header pane, edit the enabled fields as necessary.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Create a Simple Component

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotions > Create Component.

OR

From the Create Promotion workspace, click **Add Component** in the Promotion Components pane.

The Create Component workspace opens.

**Figure 9–13 Create Promotion Component Window**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Create Component". Inside, there is a sub-section titled "Promotion Component" with several input fields:

- Promotion:** A text box containing "4348" and a LOV button with "MAO Promotion" selected.
- Start Date:** A date picker showing "10/01/2009".
- End Date:** A date picker showing "10/04/2009".
- Component:** A text box containing "9267".
- Component Type:** A drop-down menu with "Simple" selected.
- Customer Type:** A text box and a LOV button.
- Description:** An empty text box.

At the bottom right of the form area is a "Next" button. At the bottom of the window are buttons for "Cancel", "Save", "Save + Repeat", and "Done".

1. In the Promotion field, enter a promotion ID or click the LOV button and select a promotion.
2. In the Component Type field, select Simple from the drop-down list.
3. In the Customer Type field, enter the customer type ID, or click on the LOV button and select a customer type. This field is optional.
4. Click **Next**. The Promotion Component Detail Creation pane opens.

Figure 9–14 Promotion Component Detail Creation Window

**Item Selection**

Department

Class

Subclass

Item Type

Item Level

Diff Type

Item

Diff

Level	Id	Diff Id	Description

**Location Selection**

Zone Group

Zone

Store

## Add Items and Locations to a Promotion Component

1. In the Item Selection area, filter and select the items to be included in the promotion component.
2. Click **Select**. The items are added to the Item Selection table.
3. In the Location Selection area, filter and select the locations to be included..
4. Click **Select**. The locations are added to the Location Selection table.
5. In the Change Type field, select the price change that occurs during the promotion:
  - **Amount Off**: The items are reduced in price by the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Exclude**: The selected items are not be affected by price changes that occur as a result of the promotion.
  - **Fixed Price**: The items are priced at the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **No Change**: The item prices are not changed. For reporting purposes, the selected items are recognized as being on promotion.
  - **Percent Off**: The items are reduced in price by the percentage entered in the Change Amount field.
6. In the Change Amount field, enter the amount off, percent off, or fixed price.

---

---

**Note:** Do not enter a negative sign before the number entered in the Change Amount field. The amount entered is assumed to be a decrease in price.

---

---

7. Enter or select a value in the Selling UOM field (Optional for a Fixed Price change.) If you leave this field blank, the selling unit of measure will default to the current selling unit of measure for the items/location combination. (The Selling UOM field is only active for a Fixed Price change.)

---

---

**Note:** If you do not specify a Selling UOM value, and the selected items do not all have the same selling unit of measure, UOM validation is moved to conflict checking engine.

---

---

8. Update the Start Date & Time and End Date & Time fields if you want this promotion component to use start and end times different from those of the promotion.
9. In the Apply To field, select the types of item pricing to which you want to apply the promotion component:
  - Clearance Only
  - Regular Only
  - Regular and Clearance
10. If you want to apply a price guide to this promotion component, enter the price guide in the Price Guide field or click the LOV button and select the price guide.
11. Select the Ignore Constraints check box to override any constraints that apply to this promotion.
12. Click **Apply**. The promotion is displayed in the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane.

---

---

**Note:** If a promotion component that you apply results in a negative margin for an item, fields in the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance list are highlighted to call the negative margin to your attention. (If the Add Column Detail button is displayed, click the button to view full details, including negative margins.) See "[View Margins \(Margin Visibility\)](#)" for more information.

---

---

13. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Click **Cancel** to go back to the Create Promotion screen.
  - Click **Save** to save the promotion component.
  - Click **Save + Repeat** to save the promotion component and add another component.
  - Click **Done** to save the promotion component and close the workspace.

## Add Funding to a Simple Component

1. Create a simple component.

- Expand the Funding pane.

**Figure 9–15 Funding Pane Simple Component Window**

- In the Corporate Funding Percent field, enter the percent that the retailer contributes to the promotion.
- Select the Create Deals check box to create a deal based on this promotion component and funding.
- In the Vendor Type field, select the type of vendor that is funding the component.
- In the Vendor field, enter the ID of the vendor, or click the LOV button and select a vendor.
- In the Deal ID field, enter the deal the promotion is associated with, or click the LOV button and select a deal.
- In the Deal Comp ID, enter the ID of the deal component field, or click the LOV button and select a deal component.

---

**Note:** The Deal and Deal ID field are disabled if you selected the Create Deals check box.

---

- In the Contribution % field, enter the percentage that this vendor contributes to the promotion component.
- Select the Use Deal Locations check box to indicate that the locations on the deal should be used for the promotion.
- Select the Use Deal Items check box to indicate that the items on the deal should be used for the promotion.

**Note:** The Use Deal Locations and Use Deal Items check boxes are disabled if the promotion component already has items or locations.

12. If you selected the Create Deals check box, add billing information for a deal to a funded component.
13. Click **Apply** to add your changes to the table.
14. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Create a Threshold Component

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotions > Create Component.

OR

From the Create Promotion workspace, click **Add Component** in the Promotion Components pane.

The Create Component workspace opens.

**Figure 9–16** Create Component Window

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Create Component". Inside, there is a sub-window titled "Promotion Component". The form contains the following fields and values:

- Promotion: 4348 (with a "MAO Promotion" icon)
- Start Date: 10/01/2009 (with a calendar icon)
- End Date: 10/04/2009 (with a calendar icon)
- Component: 9267
- Component Type: Threshold (dropdown menu)
- Description: (empty text box)
- Customer Type: (empty text box)

At the bottom right of the form area is a "Next" button. At the bottom of the main window are buttons for "Cancel", "Save", "Save + Repeat", and "Done".

1. In the Description field, enter a description of the component.
2. In the Component Type field, select Threshold.

3. In the Customer Type field, enter the ID of the customer type, or click the LOV button and select the customer type. This field is optional.
4. Click **Next**. The Promotion Component Detail Creation pane opens.

**Figure 9–17 Promotion Component Detail Creation Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Promotion Component Detail Creation' window. It features two main sections: 'Item Selection' and 'Location Selection'. The 'Item Selection' section includes input fields for Department, Class, and Subclass, each with a LOV button. It also has dropdown menus for Item Type (set to 'Item'), Item Level (set to 'Transaction Level Item'), and Diff Type (set to '- Select -'). Below these are fields for Item and Diff, each with a LOV button. A table with columns 'Level', 'Id', 'Diff Id', and 'Description' is positioned below the Item Selection fields. The 'Location Selection' section includes input fields for Zone Group, Zone, and Store, each with a LOV button. Both sections have 'Clear', 'Delete', and 'Select' buttons.

### Add Items and Locations to a Promotion Component

1. In the Item Selection area, filter and select the items to be included in the promotion component.
2. Click **Select**. The items are added to the Item Selection table.
3. In the Location Selection area, filter and select the locations to be included..
4. Click **Select**. The locations are added to the Location Selection table.
5. In the Threshold field, select the threshold you want to associate with the promotion, or click **New Threshold** to create a threshold definition.
6. Update the Start Date & Time and End Date & Time fields if you want this promotion component to use start and end times different from those of the promotion.
7. In the Apply To field, select the types of item pricing to which you want to apply the promotion component:
  - Clearance Only
  - Regular Only
  - Regular and Clearance
8. If you want to apply a price guide to this promotion component, enter the price guide in the Price Guide field or click the LOV button and select the price guide.

9. Select the Ignore Constraints check box to override any constraints that apply to this promotion.
10. Click **Apply**. The promotion is displayed in the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane.
11. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Click **Save** to save the promotion component.
  - Click **Done** to save the promotion component and close the workspace.

## Add Funding to a Threshold Component

1. Create a threshold component.
2. Expand the Funding pane.

**Figure 9–18 Funding Pane Threshold Component Window**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Funding". At the top, there is a text input field for "Corporate Funding Percent". Below it is a section titled "Threshold Uptake %" which contains a table with the following data:

Threshold	Discount	Selling UOM	Uptake %
1	\$10.00		

Below the table are two input fields: "Threshold" and "Uptake %", followed by an "Apply" button. Further down, there are several input fields and checkboxes: "Create Deals" (checkbox), "Vendor Type" (dropdown menu showing "- Select -"), "Vendor" (text field), "Deal Id" (text field), "Deal Comp Id" (text field), and "Contribution %" (text field). There are also checkboxes for "Use Deal Locations" and "Use Deal Items". At the bottom left is a "Deal Billing" button, and at the bottom right are "Clear" and "Apply" buttons. A table at the very bottom has columns: "Vendor Type", "Vendor Id", "Contribution %", "Deal Id", "Deal Comp Id", "Use Deal Locations", and "Use Deal Items". At the bottom right of this table are "Edit" and "Delete" buttons.

3. In the Corporate Funding Percent field, enter the percent that the retailer contributes to the promotion.
4. Select a threshold.
5. In the Uptake % field, enter the percentage of customers that you expect to take advantage of the promotion at this threshold.
6. Click **Apply** to add your changes to the table.

7. Select the Create Deals check box to create a deal based on this promotion component and funding.
8. In the Vendor Type field, select the type of vendor that is funding the component.
9. In the Vendor field, enter the ID of the vendor, or click the LOV button and select a vendor.
10. In the Deal ID field, enter the deal the promotion is associated with, or click the LOV button and select a deal.
11. In the Deal Comp ID, enter the ID of the deal component field, or click the LOV button and select a deal component.

---

---

**Note:** The Deal and Deal ID field are disabled if you selected the Create Deals check box.

---

---

12. In the Contribution % field, enter the percentage that this vendor contributes to the promotion component.
13. Select the Use Deal Locations check box to indicate that the locations on the deal should be used for the promotion.
14. Select the Use Deal Items check box to indicate that the items on the deal should be used for the promotion.

---

---

**Note:** Note: The Use Deal Locations and Use Deal Items check boxes are disabled if the promotion component already has items or locations.

---

---

15. If you selected the Create Deals check box, add billing information for a deal to a funded component.
16. Click **Apply** to add your changes to the table.
17. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Create a Multi-Buy Component

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotions > Create Component.

OR

From the Create Promotion workspace, click **Add Component** in the Promotion Components pane. The Create Component workspace opens.

**Figure 9–19 Create Component Window**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Create Component". Inside, there is a sub-window titled "Promotion Component". The form contains the following fields and values:

- Promotion:** 4348 (with a "MAO Promotion" button)
- Start Date:** 10/01/2009 (with a calendar icon)
- End Date:** 10/04/2009 (with a calendar icon)
- Component:** 9267
- Component Type:** Multi-Buy (dropdown menu)
- Customer Type:** (empty field with a "LOV" button)
- Description:** (empty text field)

At the bottom right of the form area is a "Next" button. At the bottom of the window are buttons for "Cancel", "Save", "Save + Repeat", and "Done".

1. In the Description field, enter a description of the component.
2. In the Component Type field, select Multi-Buy.
3. In the Customer Type field, enter the ID of the customer type, or click the LOV button and select the customer type. This field is optional.
4. Click **Next**. The Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane opens.

**Figure 9–20 Promotion Component Detail Maintenance Pane**

**Maintain Component**

**Promotion Component - Threshold**

**Promotion Component Detail Creation**

**Funding**

**Promotion Component Detail Maintenance**

Promotion: 3530 tp:

Component: 3230 tp:  Threshold:

Event:

Consignment Rate:

Customer Type:

Id	Merchandise 1	Merchandise 2	Diff Id	Item Level	Tran Level	Location Level	Location	Attribute 1	Attribute 2	Attribute 3	Status	Start Date	End Date
3121	Parent Item	100820031...		Parent Item	2	Zone	521.20				Active	05-12-2011	

Select All

\* Threshold: 401  threshold

\* Start Date & Time: 05/12/2011 12:00 AM

End Date & Time:

Apply To: Regular And Clearance

Ignore Constraints:

Attribute 1:

Attribute 2:

Attribute 3:

Status: Active Action:

**Note:** See ["Examples of Multi-Buy Components"](#) for examples of different types of multi-buy promotion components and how to create them.

## Create Buy Lists

In the Buy List area, you create one or more buy lists for a multi-buy promotion. Follow these steps to create a buy list:

- Select how the items in the buy list must be purchased:
  - All:** All the items in the buy list must be purchased to receive the discount, fixed price, or other reward.
  - Amount:** A specified money amount must be spent on items from the buy list to receive the reward.
  - Quantity:** A specified number of items in the buy list must be purchased to receive the reward.
- In the next field, enter the quantity or amount of the required purchase:
  - If All is selected, enter the number of each item in the buy list that the customer must purchase. For example, if you enter 2, the customer must buy 2 of each item in the buy list.
  - If Amount is selected, enter the money amount that the customer must spend on items in the buy list. For example, if you enter 5 and your currency is dollars, the customer must spend 5 dollars on buy list items.
  - If Quantity is selected, enter the number of items that the customer must purchase from any items in the buy list. For example, if you enter 3, the customer must purchase any 3 buy list items.
- Click **Items** to select the items for the buy list. The Selected Items window opens.

4. Add items to the buy list. See ["Add Items to a Multi-Buy Component"](#).
5. Enter a description for the buy list (optional).
6. To add another buy list, click **Add Buy List** and repeat steps 1 through 5.

---

**Note:** If your system option settings allow, you can use either AND or OR conditions to connect multiple buy lists. If all buy lists are connected by AND, the customer must purchase items from all buy lists to qualify for the reward. If OR settings are allowed on your system, you can specify options for the buy lists from which customers can purchase qualifying items. See ["Examples of Multi-Buy Components"](#) for information about multiple buy lists with OR conditions.

---

7. When you have created all the buy lists for this component, select how to apply the reward:
  - **All Buy Lists:** The reward applies to the items that the customer purchased from all buy lists.
  - **Each Buy List:** For each buy list, a separate reward applies.
  - **Reward List:** The reward applies to one or more separate reward lists. Because the customer purchased the required items, the customer can obtain a reward on one or more other items.
8. Click **Create Reward**.

Proceed to create the rewards for this promotion component.

### Create Reward Lists

The procedures to create rewards are different, depending on how the reward applies:

- If the reward applies to All Buy Lists or to the Reward List, you create the reward in the Reward List area.
- If the reward applies to Each Buy List, you create the applicable reward under each buy list.

**In the Reward List Area** If rewards apply to all buy lists together, or to one or more reward lists, you create the reward in the Reward List area.

1. Select the number or amount of items included in the reward:
  - **All:** The reward includes all items in the reward list.
  - **Amount:** The reward applies to a purchase amount of the items in the reward list.
  - **Quantity:** The reward applies to a number of items in the reward list.
2. In the next field, enter the applicable quantity or currency amount for the reward.
3. Click **Items** to select the items for the reward list. The Selected Items window opens.
4. Add items to the reward list. See ["Add Items to a Multi-Buy Component"](#).
5. Enter a description for the reward list (optional).
6. Select the type of reward from the drop-down list:

- **Amount Off:** The price for the item or items is reduced by a specified amount.
  - **Cheapest Free:** The cheapest item purchased is free.
  - **Fixed Price:** The price for the item or items is a fixed amount.
  - **Percent Off:** The price for the item or items is a specified percentage off.
7. In the next field, enter a value appropriate for the type of reward:
    - **Amount Off:** Enter the currency amount of the price reduction.
    - **Cheapest Free:** This field does not apply and is disabled.
    - **Fixed Price:** Enter the currency amount the customer must pay for the reward item (or all reward items together).
    - **Percent Off:** Enter the percentage amount to be taken off the price.
  8. If the reward is Fixed Price, enter the unit of measure of the reward item in the Selling UOM field, or click the LOV button and select the selling UOM. (The Selling UOM field is active and required only for Fixed Price rewards.)
  9. To add another reward list, click **Add Reward List** and repeat steps 1 through 8.

---

**Note:** If your system option settings allow, you can use either AND or OR conditions to connect multiple reward lists. If all buy lists are connected by AND, the customer is eligible for reward from all reward lists. If OR settings are allowed on your system, you can specify options for the reward lists from which customers can select rewards. See "[Examples of Multi-Buy Components](#)" for information about multiple reward lists with OR conditions.

---

10. When you have created all the reward lists for this component, proceed to add locations. See "[Add Locations and Save the Multi-Buy Component](#)".

**Under Each Buy List** If rewards apply to each buy list, you create each reward separately under each buy list.

1. Select the type of reward from the drop-down list:
  - **Amount Off:** The price for the item or items is reduced by a specified amount.
  - **Cheapest Free:** The cheapest item purchased is free.
  - **Fixed Price:** The price for the item or items is a fixed amount.
  - **Percent Off:** The price for the item or items is a specified percentage off.
2. In the next field, enter a value appropriate for the type of reward:
  - **Amount Off:** Enter the currency amount of the price reduction.
  - **Cheapest Free:** This field does not apply and is disabled.
  - **Fixed Price:** Enter the currency amount the customer must pay for the reward item (or all reward items together).
  - **Percent Off:** Enter the percentage amount to be taken off the price.
3. If the reward is Fixed Price, enter the unit of measure of the reward item in the Selling UOM field, or click the LOV button and select the selling UOM. (The Selling UOM field is active and required only for Fixed Price rewards.)

If there are multiple buy lists, repeat steps 1 through 3 for each of the buy lists. Then proceed to add locations. See ["Add Locations and Save the Multi-Buy Component"](#).

### Add Items to a Multi-Buy Component

For a buy list or reward list, select the transaction-level items for the list in the Selected Items window. You can select and filter items by any of the following:

**Figure 9–21 Selected Items Window**

The screenshot shows the 'Selected Items' window. The 'Description' field contains 'Wine glass'. The 'Item Selection' section includes the following fields and values:

- Department: 1234
- Class: 1000
- Subclass: 1003
- Item Type: Item
- Item Level: Transaction Level Item
- Diff Type: - Select -
- Item: (empty)
- Diff: (empty)

Buttons for 'Clear', 'Delete', and 'Select' are located below the 'Item Selection' fields. Below these is a table with the following structure:

Level	Id	Diff Id	Description

Buttons for 'Cancel' and 'Done' are located at the bottom of the window.

- Department
- Class
- Subclass
- Item Type
- Item Level
- Diff Type
- Item
- Diff

Perform the following steps:

1. Enter values or use LOV buttons to filter and select items.
2. Click **Select** to select items and move them to the Item Selection table.
3. Click **Done** when you are finished selecting items.

## Add Locations and Save the Multi-Buy Component

In the Location Selection area, add locations for this promotion component. You can add locations by any combination of zone group, zone, and store.

1. Enter Zone Group, Zone, or Store values, or use the LOV buttons to select locations.
2. Click **Select**. The locations are added to the Location Selection table.
3. Correct the Start Date & Time and End Date & Time fields if needed.
4. In the Apply To field, select the types of item pricing to which you want to apply the promotion component:
  - Clearance Only
  - Regular Only
  - Regular and Clearance
5. Select the Ignore Constraints check box if you want this component to ignore all constraints for the associated promotion.
6. Use the fields Attribute 1, Attribute 2, and Attribute 3 if you want to enter any additional descriptive text about this promotion component. For example, you can enter "end-of-aisle promotion" or "advertised in weekly flyer" as information for future reference. You can click the comment icon to open the Description window to enter text.
7. The status of this promotion component is displayed in the Status field. To change the status:
  - In the Action field, select one of the following values from the drop-down list:
  - Submit: Save and submit this promotion component for approval.
  - Approve: Approve this promotion component.
8. Click **Update**.
9. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Click **Save** to save the promotion component.
  - Click **Done** to save the promotion component and close the workspace.

## Add Funding to a Multi-Buy Component

1. Create a multi-buy component.
2. Expand the Funding pane.

**Figure 9–22 Funding Multi-Buy Component Window**

3. In the Corporate Funding Percent field, enter the percent that the retailer contributes to the promotion.
4. Select the Create Deals check box to create a deal based on this promotion component and funding.
5. In the Vendor Type field, select the type of vendor that is funding the component.
6. In the Vendor field, enter the ID of the vendor, or click the LOV button and select a vendor.
7. In the Deal ID field, enter the deal the promotion is associated with, or click the LOV button and select a deal.
8. In the Deal Comp ID, enter the ID of the deal component field, or click the LOV button and select a deal component.

---

**Note:** The Deal and Deal ID field are disabled if you selected the Create Deals check box.

---

9. In the Contribution % field, enter the percentage that this vendor contributes to the promotion component.
10. Select the Use Deal Locations check box to indicate that the locations on the deal should be used for the promotion.

---

**Note:** The Use Deal Locations check boxes are disabled if the promotion component already has locations.

---

11. If you selected the Create Deals check box, add billing information for a deal to a funded component.
12. Click **Apply** to add your changes to the table.

13. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Add Billing Information for a Deal to a Funded Component

1. Click **Deal Billing**. The Deal Billing window opens.
2. Select the information about the deal that you require:
  - **Deal Reporting Level:** The frequency that the deal is reported.
  - **Bill Back Method:** The type of invoice that is created for the supplier. Select the appropriate option.
  - **Bill Back Period:** The frequency that the vendor is charged for the bill back. Select when to charge the vendor.
  - **Invoice Processing Logic:** The method used to create invoices. Invoices are created automatically, manually, or not at all depending on the option selected.
  - **Include VAT in Deal Billing:** Select the check box to indicate that VAT should be included in the invoice information.
  - **Include Deal Income in Stock Ledger:** Select the check box to indicate that deal income accrual should be written to the stock ledger.
3. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

---



---

**Note:** If the System Options "Do not run Conflict Check for Multi-Buy Promotion Approval" is checked, then the Funding panel is disabled for multi-buy promotion.

---



---

## Examples of Multi-Buy Components

Multi-buy components provide many flexible options to design a promotion component that gives the customer a discount, fixed price, or other reward for purchasing selected items. The component can specify either a quantity or purchase amount as the requirement to receive the reward.

A multi-buy component can be simple or complex. You can use AND and OR conditions to create components with numerous purchase and reward options.

All multi-buy promotion components share common characteristics, and you create them using the same interface. Any multi-buy component can be considered as one of the following general types:

- Multi-buy "meal deal"
- Multi-buy link saver
- Multi-buy "cheapest free"
- Multi-buy with multiple reward (get) lists
- Multi-buy with AND or OR conditions for buy and reward lists

The following are examples of each of these types of multi-buy promotion components.

### Multi-Buy Meal Deal

In this example, the customer can buy one hamburger sandwich, an order of French fries, and a soda for a fixed price of five dollars. In the Buy List area, it is specified that the customer must purchase a quantity of 1 from each buy list. The AND connectors

specify that the customer must buy the required quantity from all buy lists to qualify for the reward. The reward applies to all buy lists; that is, the reward is applied to the items purchased from the buy lists. The Reward List area specifies the reward as a fixed price of 5.00.

The items can be specific items or items from selected item lists. For example, any kind of soda might qualify, or the customer might be required to purchase a particular brand or flavor of soda.

**Figure 9–23 Meal Deal Example**

The screenshot displays the 'Promotion Component Detail Maintenance' window. It is divided into two main sections: 'Buy List' and 'Reward List'.  
 In the 'Buy List' section, there are three rows of items, each with a 'Quantity' dropdown set to '1', an 'Items' text box, and a 'Delete' button. The items listed are 'Hamburger', 'Fries', and 'Soda'. Between each row is an 'And' connector dropdown. Below the items is a control bar with 'Add Buy List', 'Apply Reward To' (set to 'All Buy Lists'), and 'Create Reward' buttons.  
 In the 'Reward List' section, there is a 'Fixed Price' dropdown set to '5.00', a '\* Selling UOM' dropdown set to 'EA', and a 'Delete' button.

### Multi-Buy Link Saver

In this example, the customer receives two dollars off the price of a winter scarf if it is purchased along with both a cap and gloves. In this case, the reward is not a fixed price or discount on the purchased items, but a special deal on an additional item.

In the Buy List area, it is specified that the customer must buy a quantity of 1 from each buy list. The AND connectors specify that the customer must buy the specified quantity from both buy lists to qualify for the reward. The reward applies to the separate reward list. The Reward List area specifies a selected item or item list and a price reduction (amount off) of 2.00 for the item from the reward list.

Figure 9–24 Multi-Buy Link Saver Example

The screenshot shows the 'Promotion Component Detail Maintenance' interface. Under the 'Buy List' section, there are two items: 'Winter cap' and 'Winter gloves', each with a quantity of 1. Below the items, there is an 'And' dropdown menu. Under the 'Reward List' section, there is one item: 'Winter scarf' with a quantity of 1 and an 'Amount Off' of 2.00. The 'Apply Reward To' dropdown is set to 'Reward List'. Buttons for 'Add Buy List', 'Add Reward List', and 'Create Reward' are visible.

### Multi-Buy Cheapest Free

In the following example, the customer receives the cheapest pair of shoes free with the purchase of three pair. In the Buy List area, it is specified that the customer must buy a quantity of 3 from the buy list. The reward applies to "Each Buy List" (although in this example there is only one buy list).

---

**Note:** When a reward applies to "Each Buy List," the reward for each buy list appears under the buy list, instead of in the Reward List area. The rewards for the buy lists are created when you click **Create Reward**.

---

Figure 9–25 Multi-Buy Cheapest Free Example - One Buy List

The screenshot shows the 'Promotion Component Detail Maintenance' interface. Under the 'Buy List' section, there is one item: 'Women's shoes' with a quantity of 3. Below the item, there is a 'Cheapest Free' dropdown menu. Under the 'Reward List' section, there is one item: 'Women's shoes' with a quantity of 1 and an 'Amount Off' of 2.00. The 'Apply Reward To' dropdown is set to 'Each Buy List'. Buttons for 'Add Buy List', 'Add Reward List', and 'Create Reward' are visible.

The following example has two buy lists. If the customer buys one dress shirt and one tie, the cheaper item is free. In this example, the reward applies to all buy lists, and there is a separate Reward List area.

**Figure 9–26 Multi-Buy Cheapest Free Example - Multiple Buy Lists**

The screenshot shows the 'Promotion Component Detail Maintenance' interface. Under the 'Buy List' section, there are two rows of buy list items. The first row has a quantity of 1 and the item 'Men's dress shirts'. The second row has a quantity of 1 and the item 'Men's ties'. An 'And' connector is positioned between the two rows. Below the buy lists, there are buttons for 'Add Buy List', 'Apply Reward To' (set to 'All Buy Lists'), and 'Create Reward'. Under the 'Reward List' section, there is one reward list with the type 'Cheapest Free' and a 'Selling UOM' field.

**Multi-Buy with Multiple Reward Lists**

In this more complex example, when the customer buys one jacket **and** one pair of slacks, the customer can buy one shirt **or** two ties for a fixed price of five dollars more.

The Buy List area in this example is similar to other examples that have multiple buy lists. The customer must buy a quantity of 1 from all buy lists, and the reward applies to the reward list.

In this case, there are multiple reward lists. The OR connector specifies that the customer has the choice of a reward from either (but not both) of the reward lists. Each reward list specifies a fixed price and a quantity. In this example, the quantity is different for each reward list. (The fixed price could also be different for each reward list.)

**Figure 9–27 Multi-Buy Example with Multiple Reward Lists**

The screenshot shows the 'Promotion Component Detail Maintenance' interface. Under the 'Buy List' section, there are two rows of buy list items. The first row has a quantity of 1 and the item 'Jackets'. The second row has a quantity of 1 and the item 'Slacks'. An 'And' connector is positioned between the two rows. Below the buy lists, there are buttons for 'Add Buy List', 'Apply Reward To' (set to 'Reward List'), and 'Create Reward'. Under the 'Reward List' section, there are two rows of reward lists. The first row has a quantity of 1, item 'Shirts', and a fixed price of 5.00. The second row has a quantity of 1, item 'Ties', and a fixed price of 5.00. An 'Or' connector is positioned between the two rows. Each reward list has a 'Selling UOM' field set to 'EA' and a 'EACH' button.

**Multi-Buy with AND or OR Conditions for Buy and Reward Lists**

The following example uses both multiple buy lists and multiple reward lists. The buy and reward lists use a combination of AND and OR conditions.

In this example, the customer buys either a hamburger **or** a chicken sandwich **and** an order of French fries. The reward is either a soft drink for 10 cents **or** ice cream for 25 cents.

**Figure 9–28 Multi-Buy Example with AND and OR Conditions**

The screenshot displays the 'Promotion Component Detail Maintenance' interface. It is divided into two main sections: 'Buy List' and 'Reward List'.

**Buy List:**

- The first row contains a 'Quantity' dropdown set to '1', an 'Items' button, a text field containing 'Hamburger', and a 'Delete' button.
- The second row contains an 'Or' dropdown, a 'Quantity' dropdown set to '1', an 'Items' button, a text field containing 'Chicken sandwich', and a 'Delete' button.
- The third row contains an 'And' dropdown, a 'Quantity' dropdown set to '1', an 'Items' button, a text field containing 'French fries', and a 'Delete' button.
- Below the rows are buttons for 'Add Buy List', 'Apply Reward To', a 'Reward List' dropdown, and 'Create Reward'.

**Reward List:**

- The first row contains a 'Quantity' dropdown set to '1', an 'Items' button, a text field containing 'Soft drink', and a 'Delete' button.
- Below this row are fields for 'Fixed Price' (0.10), '\* Selling UOM' (EA), and a unit icon (EACH).
- The second row contains an 'Or' dropdown, a 'Quantity' dropdown set to '1', an 'Items' button, a text field containing 'Ice cream', and a 'Delete' button.
- Below this row are fields for 'Fixed Price' (0.25), '\* Selling UOM' (EA), and a unit icon (EACH).
- At the bottom is an 'Add Reward List' button.

## Create a Finance Component

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotions > Create Component.

OR

From the Create Promotion workspace, click **Add Component** in the Promotion Components pane.

The Create Component workspace opens.

**Figure 9–29 Create Promotion Component Window**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Create Component" with a sub-tab "Promotion Component". The form contains the following fields and values:

Field	Value
Promotion	9182
Start Date	01/12/2010
End Date	01/19/2010
Component	9302
Component Type	Finance
Customer Type	
Description	

Buttons: Next, Cancel, Save, Save + Repeat, Done

1. In the Promotion field, enter a promotion ID or click the LOV button and select a promotion.
2. In the Component Type field, select Finance from the drop-down list.
3. In the Description field, enter the description of the promotion component.
4. In the Customer Type field, enter the customer type ID, or click on the LOV button and select a customer type. This field is optional.
5. Click **Next**. The details promotion component detail screen opens.

### **Add Credit Card Details**

The type of credit card is required in order to qualify for the promotion.

**Figure 9–30 Add Credit Card Details**

1. In the credit details workspace, click **Add Row**.
2. In the Credit Type field, select the type of the credit card from the drop-down list.
3. In the BIN field, enter the Bank Index Number or click on the LOV button and select the bank name and index number.
4. In the Commission Rate field, enter the commission percentage that the Retailer has to pay to the Credit Card Company when a customer purchases using the Finance Promotion.
5. In the Comments field, enter the comments.
6. Click **Apply**.
  - The credit card details are displayed in the credit details table.
7. To edit the credit details, select a credit type and click **Edit**.
8. Make the necessary changes and click **Apply** to save the changes.

### Add Threshold Details

Threshold amount is the total amount that the customer has to spend in order to qualify for the Finance Promotion. For example, promotion is set up for Visa Credit Card with a threshold of \$1,000 and promotion percentage of 0, with a duration of 18 months. If the customer spends \$1,000 or more for the items in the promotion and pays using Visa Credit Card, the customer has an option to pay back the credit card company without any interest (0 %) in 18 months.

**Figure 9–31 Add Threshold Details**

1. In the Threshold Details workspace, click **Add Row**.
2. In the Threshold Amount Retail field, enter the threshold amount to be applied for the credit promotion.
3. In the Duration field, enter the month and day in the respective fields.
4. Click **Apply**.
  - The threshold details are displayed in the threshold details table.
5. To edit the threshold details, select a threshold and click **Edit**.
6. Make the necessary changes and click **Apply** to save the changes.

### Promotion Component Detail Maintenance

You can make your selection based on Department, Class, Subclass, Item Type, Item Level, Diff Type, Item, or Diff in order to specify the items that should be included in the promotion component.

#### Item Selection

1. In the Description field, enter the description based on the item selection.

**Figure 9–32** Item Selection

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Selected Items" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. Below the title bar is a "Description" text input field. Underneath is a section titled "Item Selection" with a dropdown arrow. This section contains several filter fields, each with a search icon and a plus sign to its right:

- Department: [ ] + [ ]
- Class: [ ] + [ ]
- Subclass: [ ] + [ ]
- Item Type: [ Item ] (dropdown)
- Item Level: [ Transaction Level Item ] (dropdown)
- Diff Type: [ - Select - ] (dropdown)
- Item: [ ] + [ ]
- Diff: [ ] + [ ]

At the bottom of the filter section are three buttons: "Clear", "Delete", and "Select". Below this is a table titled "Item Selection" with a pencil icon in the top right corner. The table has four columns: "Level", "Id", "Diff Id", and "Description". The table body is currently empty. At the bottom of the dialog box are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Done".

You can select and filter items for inclusion by any of the following:

- Department
- Class

- Subclass
  - Item Type
  - Item Level
  - Diff Type
  - Item
  - Diff
2. Enter values or use LOV buttons to filter and select items.
  3. Click **Select** to select items and move them to the Item Selection table.
  4. Click **Done** when you are finished selecting items.

### Item Exclusion

1. In the Description field, enter the description.

**Figure 9–33** Item Exclusion

**Selected Items**

Description

▼ **Item Selection**

Department  +

Class  +

Subclass  +

Item Type

Item Level

Diff Type

Item  +

Diff  +

**Item Selection**

Level	Id	Diff Id	Description

You can select and filter items for exclusion by any of the following:

- Department
- Class
- Subclass
- Item Type

- Item Level
  - Diff Type
  - Item
  - Diff
2. Enter values or use LOV buttons to filter and select items.
  3. Click **Select** to select items and move them to the Item Selection table.
  4. Click **Done** when you are finished selecting items.

### Locations Selection and Exclusion

You can add locations by any combination of zone and store. You can also create item exclusion records for existing Item/Location records that have been created at a level above the transaction item level.

1. In the Location Selection area, Enter Zone Group, Zone, or Store values, or use the LOV buttons to select locations.
2. Click **Select**. The locations are added to the Location Selection table.
3. In the Location Exclusion area, enter the location ID to exclude, or click on the LOV button to select the location to be excluded from the selected list.
4. Click **Select**. The selected locations for exclusion are listed in the Location Selection table.
5. Correct the Start Date & Time and End Date & Time fields if needed.
6. Select the Ignore Constraints check box if you want this component to ignore all constraints for the associated promotion.
7. Use the fields Attribute 1, Attribute 2, and Attribute 3 if you want to enter any additional descriptive text about this promotion component. You can click the comment icon to open the Description window to enter text.
8. The status of this promotion component is displayed in the Status field. To change the status:
  - In the Action field, select one of the following values from the drop-down list:
    - **Submit**: Save and submit this promotion component for approval.
    - **Approve**: Approve this promotion component.
9. Click **Update**.
10. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Click **Save** to save the promotion component.
  - Click **Done** to save the promotion component and close the workspace.

## Create a Finance Component

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotions > Create Component.

OR

From the Create Promotion workspace, click **Add Component** in the Promotion Components pane.

The Create Component workspace opens.

**Figure 9–34 Create Promotion Component Window**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Create Component" with a sub-tab "Promotion Component". The form contains the following fields and values:

Field	Value
Promotion	9182
Start Date	01/12/2010
End Date	01/19/2010
Component	9302
Component Type	Finance
Description	
Customer Type	

Buttons: Next, Cancel, Save, Save + Repeat, Done

1. In the Promotion field, enter a promotion ID or click the LOV button and select a promotion.
2. In the Component Type field, select Finance from the drop-down list.
3. In the Description field, enter the description of the promotion component.
4. In the Customer Type field, enter the customer type ID, or click on the LOV button and select a customer type. This field is optional.
5. Click **Next**. The details promotion component detail screen opens.

### Add Credit Card Details

The type of credit card is required in order to qualify for the promotion.

**Figure 9–35 Add Credit Card Details**

The screenshot shows a workspace titled "Credit Details". At the top, there is a form with the following fields:

- \* Credit Type:** A drop-down menu with the text "- Select -".
- \* BIN Number:** A text input field with a small square icon to its right.
- Commission Rate:** A text input field.
- Comments:** A text input field with a speech bubble icon to its right.

Buttons for "Add Row" and "Apply" are located to the right of the form fields. Below the form is a table with the following columns:

Credit Type	Bank Name	BIN Number From	To BIN Number	Commission Rate	Comments

Buttons for "Edit" and "Delete" are located at the bottom right of the table area.

1. In the credit details workspace, click **Add Row**.
2. In the Credit Type field, select the type of the credit card from the drop-down list.
3. In the BIN field, enter the Bank Index Number or click on the LOV button and select the bank name and index number.
4. In the Commission Rate field, enter the commission percentage that the Retailer has to pay to the Credit Card Company when a customer purchases using the Finance Promotion.
5. In the Comments field, enter the comments.
6. Click **Apply**.
  - The credit card details are displayed in the credit details table.
7. To edit the credit details, select a credit type and click **Edit**.
8. Make the necessary changes and click **Apply** to save the changes.

## Add Threshold Details

Threshold amount is the total amount that the customer has to spend in order to qualify for the Finance Promotion. For example, promotion is set up for Visa Credit Card with a threshold of \$1,000 and promotion percentage of 0, with a duration of 18 months. If the customer spends \$1,000 or more for the items in the promotion and pays using Visa Credit Card, the customer has an option to pay back the credit card company without any interest (0 %) in 18 months.

**Figure 9–36 Add Threshold Details**

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Threshold Details". At the top, there are three input fields: "Threshold Amount Retail" (with a small asterisk), "Promotion Amount (%)" (with a small asterisk and the value "0"), and "Duration" which is split into "Month(s)" and "Day(s)" fields. To the right of these fields are "Add Row" and "Apply" buttons. Below the input fields is a table with the same title "Threshold Details". The table has four columns: "Threshold Amount Retail", "Promotion Amount (%)", "Month(s)", and "Day(s)". The table body is currently empty. At the bottom right of the table area are "Edit" and "Delete" buttons.

1. In the Threshold Details workspace, click **Add Row**.
2. In the Threshold Amount Retail field, enter the threshold amount to be applied for the credit promotion.
3. In the Duration field, enter the month and day in the respective fields.
4. Click **Apply**.
  - The threshold details are displayed in the threshold details table.
5. To edit the threshold details, select a threshold and click **Edit**.
6. Make the necessary changes and click **Apply** to save the changes.

## Promotion Component Detail Maintenance

You can make your selection based on Department, Class, Subclass, Item Type, Item Level, Diff Type, Item, or Diff in order to specify the items that should be included in the promotion component.

### Item Selection

1. In the Description field, enter the description based on the item selection.

Figure 9–37 Item Selection

You can select and filter items for inclusion by any of the following:

- Department
  - Class
  - Subclass
  - Item Type
  - Item Level
  - Diff Type
  - Item
  - Diff
2. Enter values or use LOV buttons to filter and select items.
  3. Click **Select** to select items and move them to the Item Selection table.
  4. Click **Done** when you are finished selecting items.

#### Item Exclusion

1. In the Description field, enter the description.

Figure 9–38 Item Exclusion

You can select and filter items for exclusion by any of the following:

- Department
  - Class
  - Subclass
  - Item Type
  - Item Level
  - Diff Type
  - Item
  - Diff
2. Enter values or use LOV buttons to filter and select items.
  3. Click **Select** to select items and move them to the Item Selection table.
  4. Click **Done** when you are finished selecting items.

### Locations Selection and Exclusion

You can add locations by any combination of zone and store. You can also create item exclusion records for existing Item/Location records that have been created at a level above the transaction item level.

1. In the Location Selection area, Enter Zone Group, Zone, or Store values, or use the LOV buttons to select locations.

2. Click **Select**. The locations are added to the Location Selection table.
3. In the Location Exclusion area, enter the location ID to exclude, or click on the LOV button to select the location to be excluded from the selected list.
4. Click **Select**. The selected locations for exclusion are listed in the Location Selection table.
5. Correct the Start Date & Time and End Date & Time fields if needed.
6. Select the Ignore Constraints check box if you want this component to ignore all constraints for the associated promotion.
7. Use the fields Attribute 1, Attribute 2, and Attribute 3 if you want to enter any additional descriptive text about this promotion component. You can click the comment icon to open the Description window to enter text.
8. The status of this promotion component is displayed in the Status field. To change the status:
  - In the Action field, select one of the following values from the drop-down list:
    - Submit: Save and submit this promotion component for approval.
    - Approve: Approve this promotion component.
9. Click **Update**.
10. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Click **Save** to save the promotion component.
  - Click **Done** to save the promotion component and close the workspace.

## Cancel Item/Location

The user can cancel an item or location from an active price event that has been created at a level higher than the transaction item location level. This is applicable only to active promotion price events created as simple or threshold, including vendor funded and customer segment, and it is not allowed for multi-buy promotions, finance promotions, price changes, or clearance programs.

To cancel an item and/or location:

1. Select the promotion component detail row.
2. Click **Cancel Item/Loc**. The Cancel Item/Locations window opens.
3. Select the item to be cancelled off the promotion. Note that the item selected may be parent, parent-diff, or transaction level.
4. Click **Apply**.
5. Select the item or location to cancel.
6. Click the appropriate button:
  - **Cancel**: Closes out of the cancel request window without processing any data.
  - **Cancel Item/Loc**: Triggers the promotion cancellation or the merchandise/location(s) and will initiate an asynchronous conflict check, close the window, and returns the user to the Promotion Component Details window. The status of the new row is Conflict Checking, and will later change to Cancel Pending after successful conflict check is complete.

## Maintain a Promotion Component

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotion > Maintain Component. The Maintain Component workspace opens.

**Figure 9–39** Maintain Promotion Component Workspace

1. In the Promotion field, enter the ID of the promotion that the component is associated with, or click the LOV button and select a promotion.
2. In the Component field, enter the ID of the component you want to maintain, or click the LOV button and select a component.
3. In the Customer Type field, enter the ID of the customer type, or click the LOV button and select the customer type. This field is optional.
4. Click **Next**. Additional component maintenance panes are displayed.

---

**Note:** Collapse and expand areas and panes to view the information needed to complete the task.

---

### Maintain Component Details

1. In the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane, edit the name of the component as necessary.
2. Enter the consignment rate used for the item while it is on promotion, if necessary.
3. To edit a specific record, select a record, or click **Select All** to make changes to all records on the table.
4. Click **Edit**.

5. Edit the enabled fields as necessary.
6. Click **Apply**.
7. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Delete Component Details

1. In the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane, select the record you want to delete:
  - To edit a specific record, select a record.
  - Click **Select All** to make changes to all records in the table.
2. In the Status section, click **Action**, then select the worksheet, and then click **Update**. Once the status is reset to Worksheet, then you can continue with the delete process.
3. Highlight the rows you want to delete. Click **Delete**.
4. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
5. Click **Yes**. The promotion component detail data is removed from the multi-record block.
6. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the workspace.

## Define Item Exceptions and Exclusions

1. In the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane, select the record for which you want to create an item exception or exclusion. The Item Exceptions and Exclusion pane opens.
2. In the Location field, enter a location ID, or click the LOV button and select a location.

---

---

**Note:** You can only create item exceptions or exclusions for items above the transaction level.

---

---

3. Create the exception or exclusion:
    - Click **Create Exceptions** to create an exception to the selected record.
    - Click **Create Exclusion** to create an exclusion.
- 
- 
- Note:** Exceptions and exclusions can only be created and approved for details that are in worksheet status only.
- 
- 

4. The pane closes. In the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane exceptions and exclusions are indicated in the Exclusion/Exception Indicator column:
  - A down arrow indicates that the item/location records contains an exception or exclusion.
  - An up arrow indicates that the item/location records is an exception or exclusion.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the pane.

## Define Location Exceptions and Exclusions

1. In the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane, select the record for which you want to create a location exception or exclusion. The Location Exceptions and Exclusion pane opens.
2. In the Location field, enter a location ID, or click the LOV button and select a location.

---

---

**Note:** You can only create location exceptions or exclusions for locations at the zone level.

---

---

3. Create the exception or exclusion:
  - Click **Create Exceptions** to create an exception to the selected record.
  - Click **Create Exclusions** to create an exclusion.

---

---

**Note:** Exceptions and exclusions can only be created and approved for details that are in worksheet status only.

---

---

4. The pane closes. In the Promotion Component Detail Maintenance pane exceptions and exclusions are indicated in the Exclusion/Exception Indicator column:
  - A down arrow indicates that the item/location records that contain an exception or exclusion.
  - An up arrow indicates that the item/location records that is an exception or exclusion.
5. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the pane.

## Promotion Events

A promotion event is a method of grouping promotions that occur during a period of time. Each event can be associated with many promotions, but a promotion can only be associated with one event.

Updates can be made to the details of existing promotion events.

### Create a Promotion Event

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotion Events > Create/Maintain Events. The Maintain Promotion Events workspace opens.

Figure 9–40 Maintain Promotion Events Window

Event Id	Event Description	Theme	Start Date	End Date
1	TP-Event	Test	12/01/2007	12/04/2007
41	nptest		12/01/2007	12/02/2007
61	RP WF Promotion	RP theame	02/24/2008	03/24/2008

1. In the Promotion Events section, click **New**.
2. In the Event Description field, enter a name for the event you are creating.
3. In the Theme field, enter any additional informative information about the event.
4. In the Start Date and Time fields:
  - In the first field, enter the date the event starts, or click the LOV button and select a date.
  - In the second field, enter the time the event starts.
5. In the End Date and Time fields:
  - In the first field, enter the date the event ends, or click the LOV button and select a date.
  - In the second field, enter the time the event ends.
6. Click **Apply**. The promotion event is added to the table.
7. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Add a Promotion to an Event

1. In the Maintain Promotion Events pane, click **New Promotion**. The Create Promotion workspace opens.

Figure 9–41 Create Promotions Window

☰ Promotion Header

* Promotion	16061	*		Comments		* Start Date	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	
Description	<input type="text"/>						End Date	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Event	<input type="text"/>		<input type="text"/>						
* Currency	USD		US Dollar						

Referenced Deals    Referenced Deals: None

Status    Worksheet

Secondary Application of Discounts

☰ Promotion Components

Component Id	Component Name	Type	Status	Secondary Application	Conflicts

Conflict Check
Add Component
Create from Existing
Delete
Edit

2. Add details to create a promotion.

## Maintain a Promotion Event

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotion Events > Create/Maintain Events. The Maintain Promotion Events workspace opens.

Figure 9–42 Maintain Promotion Events Window

Event Id	Event Description	Theme	Start Date	End Date
1	TP-Event	Test	12/01/2007	12/04/2007
41	nptest		12/01/2007	12/02/2007
61	RP WF Promotion	RP theme	02/24/2008	03/24/2008

1. Select the event you want to maintain from the table.
2. In the Promotion Events area, edit the enabled fields as necessary.
3. Click **Apply**. Your changes are added to the promotion event and appear on the table
4. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

### Delete a Promotion Event

1. Select the event you want to delete from the table.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
3. Click **Yes**. The record is removed from the table.
4. Click **Done** to close the window.

### Maintain Approved System Generated Exclusions

Once a system generated exclusion occurs, the user has the option to fix the item/location data for the exclusion and reprocess the data.

1. Perform the necessary maintenance to fix all or some of the exclusions created.
2. Highlight the exclusion row(s).

3. Click **Reprocess Approval**. Reprocessing will result in one of the following:
  - Exclusions are corrected successfully, resulting in no exclusions needed for the price event. The detail row previously added for exclusions will be removed and all item data will reside under the original component detail.
  - Exclusions are corrected successfully; some have been left by the user as valid exclusions. The detail row will be updated to reflect only the remaining exclusions (not fixed by user). Fixed item exclusions will reside under the original component detail row.
  - Exclusions are corrected unsuccessfully; the detail row will remain without changes for any item/location that does not pass conflict check.

## Threshold

A threshold is a discount that a customer receives for purchasing a pre-determined amount of an item. You must define the levels that exist in the threshold, then associate the threshold definition to the threshold component.

### Create a Threshold

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotion Threshold > Create Threshold. The Create Threshold workspace opens.

**Figure 9-43** Create Threshold Window

1. In the Name field, enter a description of the threshold you are creating.

2. In the Currency field, enter the ID of the appropriate currency, or click the LOV button and select a currency.
3. In the Qualification Type field, select how the threshold is met:
  - **Threshold Level:** All items on the promotion can be counted together to meet the terms of the threshold and have the promotion applied.
  - **Item Level:** Each item on the promotion must meet the threshold to have the discount applied.
4. In the Threshold Type field, select the measure that indicates how the threshold is met:
  - **Quantity:** A number of units of an item must be purchased by the customer from the retailer.
  - **Amount:** A value of the item must be purchased by the customer from the retailer.
5. In the Discount Type field, select the method used to determine the new price of the item.
  - **Percent Off:** A price for an item is changed by a percentage removed from the original price. The percent of change is determined by the percent entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Amount Off:** A price for an item is changed by an amount removed from the original price. The amount of change is determined by the amount entered in the Change Amount field.
  - **Fixed Price:** The price for the item will be at a specified retail that will be defined in the change amount field.
6. If you choose Fixed Price in the Discount type field, you must enter the Selling UOM for the item.
7. In the threshold area on the right, enter the amount or quantity that needs to be purchased in the Threshold Type field.
8. In the Discount Type field, enter the percent off, amount off, or fixed price received.
9. Press **Tab** to add additional threshold levels.
10. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Vendor Funding Defaults

When an item is on promotion at a retailer, part of the discount a customer receives may be contributed by the vendor. When you set up a promotion, you can define the vendor's contribution.

You can create billing information defaults at the vendor level, which allows you to apply the information to any deal that is created through the promotions dialog that is associated with the vendor.

### Create Vendor Funding Defaults

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Vendor Funding Defaults > Create Defaults. The Create Defaults workspace opens.

**Figure 9–44 Create Defaults Window**

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Create Defaults" with a sub-header "Vendor Funding Defaults Creation". The window contains the following fields:

- \* Vendor Type: A dropdown menu.
- \* Vendor: A text input field with a small grid icon (LOV button) to its right.
- \* Deal Reporting Level: A dropdown menu with "- Select -" as the current value.
- \* Invoice Processing Logic: A dropdown menu with "- Select -" as the current value.
- \* Bill Back Method: A dropdown menu with "- Select -" as the current value.
- \* Bill Back Period: A dropdown menu with "- Select -" as the current value.
- Include VAT in Deal Billing: An unchecked checkbox.
- Include Deal Income in Stock Ledger: An unchecked checkbox.

At the bottom right of the window, there are three buttons: "Cancel", "Save + Repeat", and "Done".

1. In the Vendor Type field, select the type of vendor that is contributing to the promotion.
2. In the Vendor field, enter the ID of the vendor, or click the LOV button and select a vendor.
3. In the Deal Reporting Level field, select the frequency of deal reporting.
4. In the Bill Back Method field, select the type of invoice that is created for the supplier.
5. In the Bill Back Period field, select the frequency that the vendor is charged for the bill back.
6. In the Invoice Processing Logic field, select the method used to create invoices. Invoices are created automatically, manually, or not at all depending on the option selected.
7. Select the Include VAT in Deal Billing check box to indicate that VAT should be included in the invoice information.
8. Select the Include Deal Income in Stock Ledger check box to indicate that deal income accrual should be written to the stock ledger.
9. Click **Done** to save any changes and close the window.

## Edit Vendor Funding Defaults

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Vendor Funding Defaults > Maintain Defaults. The Maintain Defaults workspace opens.

**Figure 9–45 Maintain Vendor Funding Defaults Window**

Vendor Type	Vendor	Deal Reporting Lev	Bill Back Method	Bill Back Period	Invoice Processing	Inc VAT in Deal Bill	Inc Deal Income in
Supplier	MSOB_Supplier2...	Month	Credit Note	Month	Automatic All Va...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Supplier	New supplier for ...	Month	Credit Note	Month	Automatic All Va...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Wholesaler	RPM-Test-1	Month	Credit Note	Quarter	Automatic All Va...	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

\* Vendor Type: Supplier

\* Vendor: 1111111111 MSOB\_Supplier2\_

\* Deal Reporting Level: Month

\* Invoice Processing Logic: Automatic All Values

\* Bill Back Method: Credit Note

\* Bill Back Period: Month

Include VAT in Deal Billing:

Include Deal Income in Stock Ledger:

1. On the table, select a vendor. The details area is enabled.
2. Update the enabled fields as necessary.
3. Click **Apply** to add your changes to the table.
4. Click **Done** to save any change and close the window.

## Delete a Vendor Funded Default

1. On the table, select a vendor.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
3. Click **Yes**.
4. Click **Done** to save any change and close the window.

## Promotion Constraints

The number of days before the promotion is called the promotion constraint. You can set up promotion constraints at the department, class, or subclass level for a particular zone or location. A warning will appear if a price change or promotion is created that would fall a certain number of days before or during another approved promotion or price change.

### Create a Promotion Constraint

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotion Constraints > Maintain Promotion Constraints. The Create Promotion Constraints workspace opens.

**Figure 9–46** Create Promotion Constraints Window

1. Enter the ID of the merchandise level the promotion constraint should apply to, or click the LOV button and select the appropriate merchandise level
2. In the Location Selection area, select the locations the promotion constraint should apply to.
  - **Zone Group:** Enter the ID of the zone group the constraint should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a zone group.
  - **Zone:** Enter the ID of the zone the constraint should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a zone.
  - **Location:** Enter the ID of the location the constraint should apply to, or click the LOV button and select a location.

3. In the Constraint field, enter the number of days for the promotion constraint.
4. Click **Apply**. A row is added to the table.
5. Click **Save**.
6. Click **Done** to close the workspace.

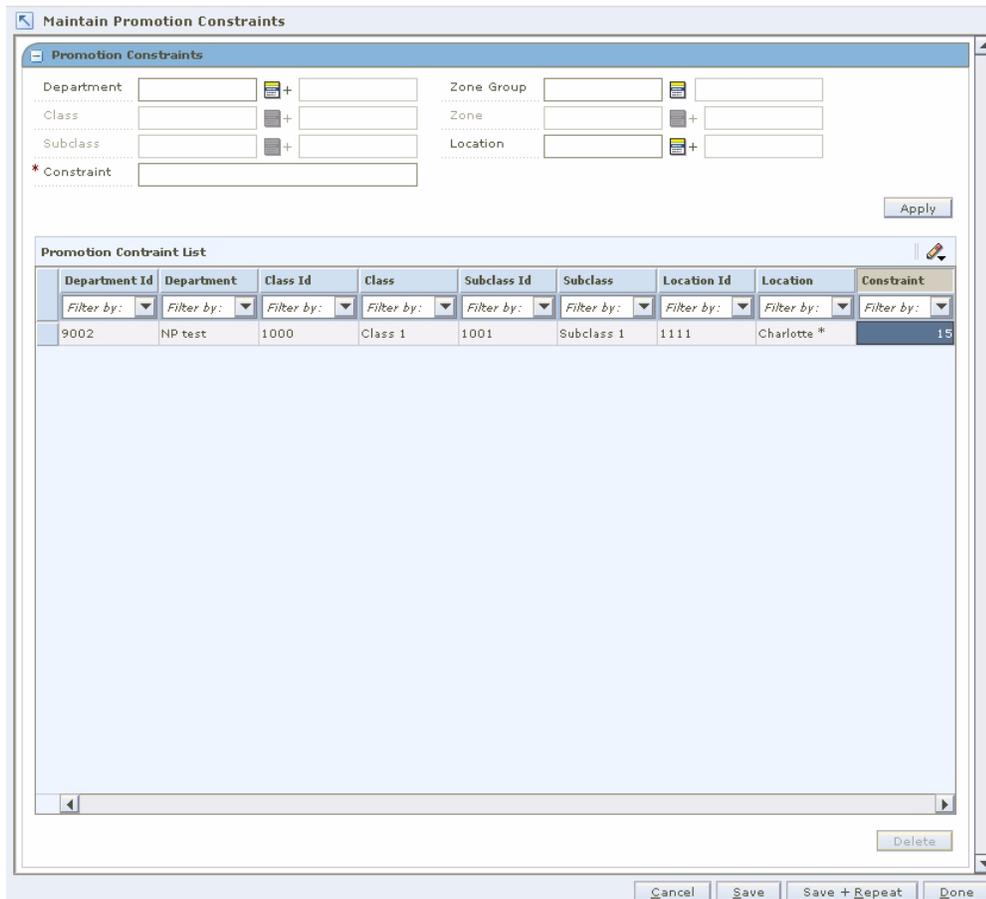
## Maintain a Promotion Constraint

The Maintain Promotion Constraint workspace allows you to maintain promotion constraints.

### Search for a Promotion Constraint

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Promotion Constraints > Maintain Promotion Constraints. The Maintain Promotion Constraints workspace opens.

**Figure 9–47** Maintain Promotion Constraints Window



1. Enter or select the criteria to limit your search.
2. Click **Search**. Your results appear in the Promotion Constraints list.

### Maintain a Promotion Constraint

1. Select the promotion constraint you want to edit.
2. Edit the Constraint value as needed.

3. Click **Save**.
4. Click **Done** to close the workspace.

### **Delete a Promotion Constraint**

1. In the Promotion Constraints table, select the row you want to delete by clicking the box to the left of the row. Press and hold the Ctrl key while selecting to select multiple rows. Click **Select All** to select all the rows.
2. Click **Delete**. You are prompted to confirm your decision.
3. Click **Yes**.
4. Click **Done** to close the workspace.



---

---

## Security Manager

Oracle Retail Security Manager (RSM) gives the system administrator a single point of security management for RPM. Users with like functions are grouped together into roles. The roles are then assigned the types of permissions needed for each workflow and for the data within an application.

Access to RSM is restricted to those with appropriate security privileges.

### Role Administration

This section describes how to create roles, edit roles, add users to a role, remove users from a role, add workflow permissions to a role, delete a workflow and associated action from a role, add data permissions to a role, and delete data permissions from a role.

### Roles

A role is a way to group workflows and actions of applications. When you create a role, you assign it a name. Each role can be used to give different levels of permissions to users who have that role. After you create the role, you can:

- [Add Users to a Role](#)
- [Remove Users from a Role](#)
- [Add Workflow Permissions to a Role](#)
- [Delete a Workflow and Associated Action from a Role](#)
- [Add Data Permissions to a Role](#)
- [Delete a Data Permission from a Role](#)

---

---

**Note:** Permissions are assigned to roles, then users are assigned roles. Permissions are not assigned directly to users.

---

---

### Workflows and Actions

A workflow is a secured task or group of tasks in an application. An action is the type of ability to which users associated with a role have access in an application work flow. When the role, workflow, and action are associated, users assigned to the role can complete their work.

Each application that uses RSM provides a list of workflows and actions that a user assigned to the appropriate role can access through RSM.

There are six types of actions that can be assigned to a role and workflow:

- **Access:** Users associated with the role have access to the application, but are not allowed see any secured information within a workflow. Users must have access to an application in order to have any of the other permission types.

---

---

**Note:** This action is the lowest level of permission a user associated with a role can have. You must assign Access to a role before any of the other permissions are available.

---

---

- **Edit:** Users associated with the role are allowed to create, update, and save any changes to a workflow.
- **View:** Users associated with the role are allowed to see to all secured information in a workflow, but not make any changes to the data in the workflow.
- **Approve:** Users associated with the role are allowed to change the status of a workflow to Approved.
- **Submit:** Users associated with the role are allowed to change the status of a workflow from Worksheet to Submitted.
- **Emergency:** Users associated with the role are granted special access that goes beyond normal day-to-day access to functionality. This allows users to bypass normal delays in processing.

---

---

**Note:** Permissions are assigned to roles, then users are assigned to roles. Permissions are not assigned directly to users.

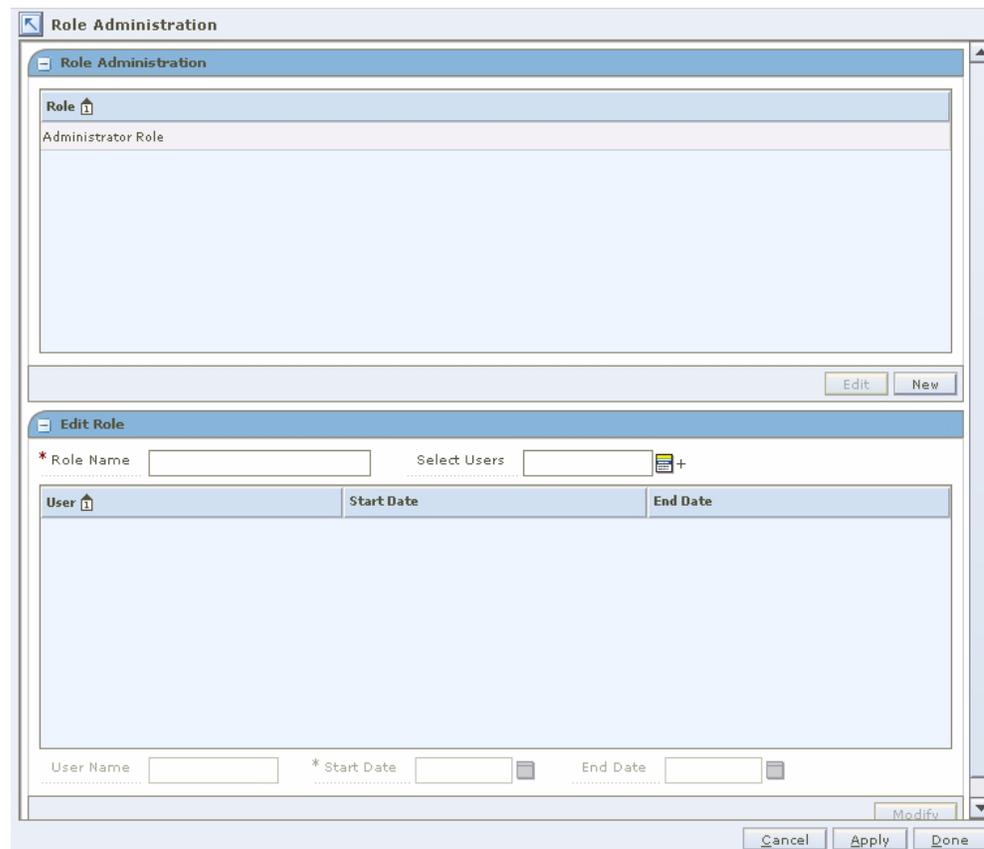
---

---

## Create a Role

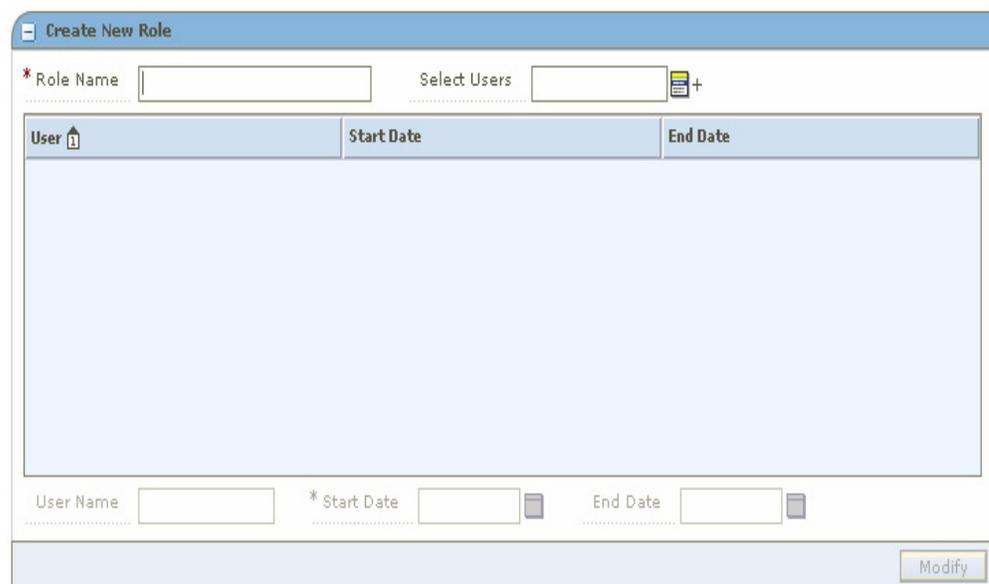
**Navigate:** From Tasks, select Role Administration > Role Administration. The Role Administration workspace opens.

Figure 10–1 Role Administrator Window



1. In the Role Administration workspace, click **New**. The Create New Role pane opens.

Figure 10–2 Create New Role Window

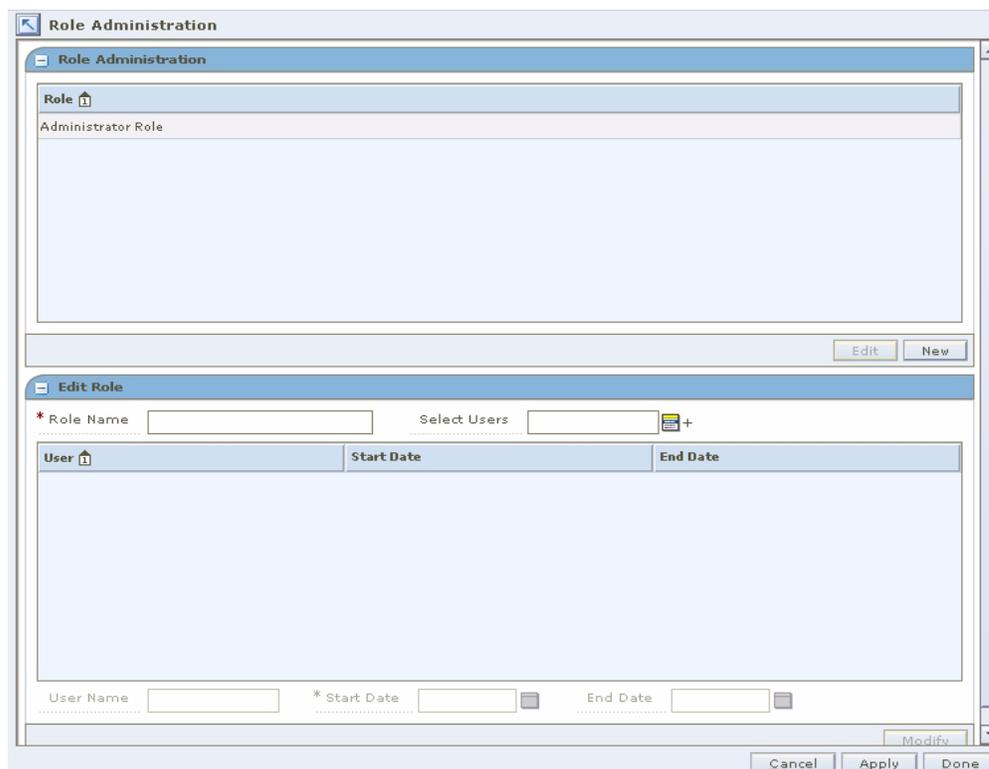


2. In the Role Name field, enter the name of the new role you are creating.
3. Click the LOV button next to the Select Users field.
  - a. Select a user from the left column.
  - b. Click the right arrow button . The user is listed in the right (selected users) column.
  - c. Repeat steps a and b until all users assigned to the role are selected.
  - d. Click **Select**. The user names appear in the table.
4. Modify the end date of a user.
  - a. Select a user name from the table.
  - b. Enter a different start date in the Start Date field, or click the calendar button and select a date.
  - c. Enter an end date in the End Date field, or click the calendar button and select a date. The End Date field can be left blank.
5. Click **Modify**. The role is added to the list of roles.
6. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The new role is saved.
  - Click **Done**. The new role is saved and the workspace is closed.

## Edit a Role

**Navigate:** From Tasks, select Role Administration > Role Administration. The Role Administration workspace is displayed.

Figure 10–3 Role Administration Workspace



1. In the Role Administration pane, select a role.
2. Click **Edit**. The role name is displayed in the Edit Role pane. (You can also double-click on the role you want to edit.)
3. Edit the role as needed:
  - Add users to a role
  - Remove users from a role
  - Change the name of the role by editing the Role Name field.
4. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes to the role are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes to the role are saved and the workspace is closed.

## Add Users to a Role

**Navigate:** From Tasks, select Role Administration > Role Administration. The Role Administration workspace is displayed.

Figure 10–4 Role Administration Window

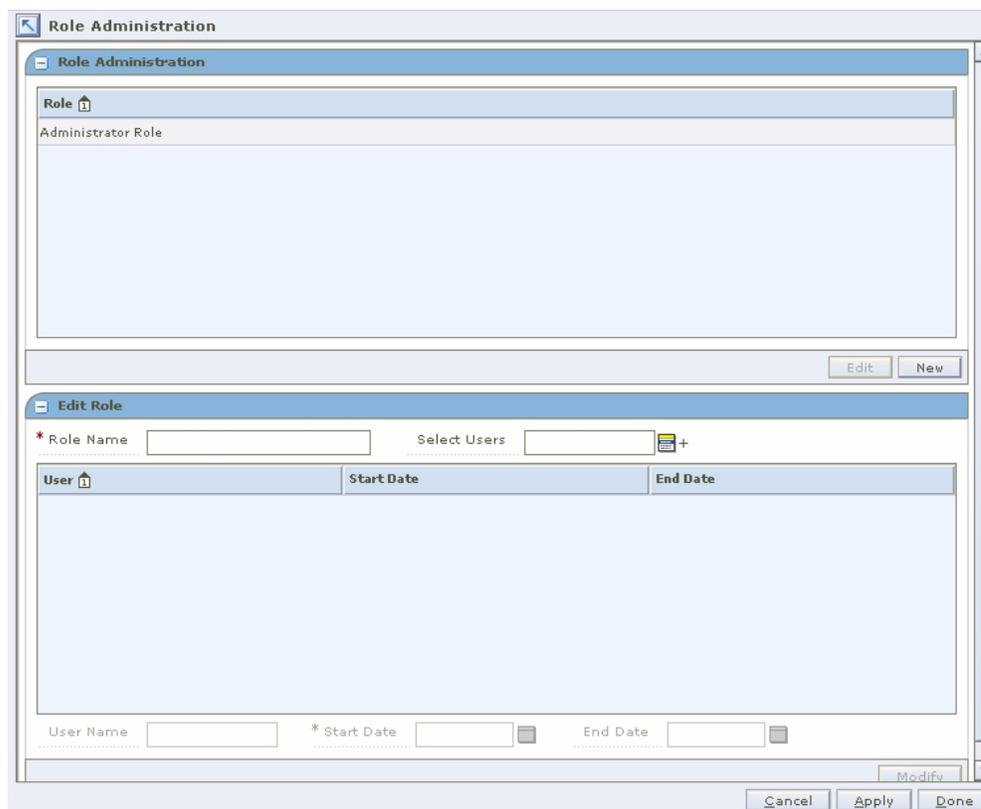
The screenshot shows the 'Role Administration' window. The main area is titled 'Role Administration' and contains a table with one row: 'Role' with the value 'Administrator Role'. Below this table are 'Edit' and 'New' buttons. Below that is a tab 'Edit Role'. Under 'Edit Role', there is a '\* Role Name' field, a 'Select Users' field with a list icon and a plus sign, and a table with columns 'User', 'Start Date', and 'End Date'. Below the table are 'User Name', '\* Start Date', and 'End Date' fields. At the bottom right are 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Done' buttons.

1. Click the LOV button next to the Select Users field.
2. Select a user to add from the left (available users) column.
3. Click the right arrow button . The user is displayed in the right (selected users) column.
4. Click **Select**. The users are added to the role.
5. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes are saved and the workspace is closed.

## Remove Users from a Role

**Navigate:** From Tasks, select Role Administration > Role Administration. The Role Administration workspace is displayed.

Figure 10–5 Role Administration Window

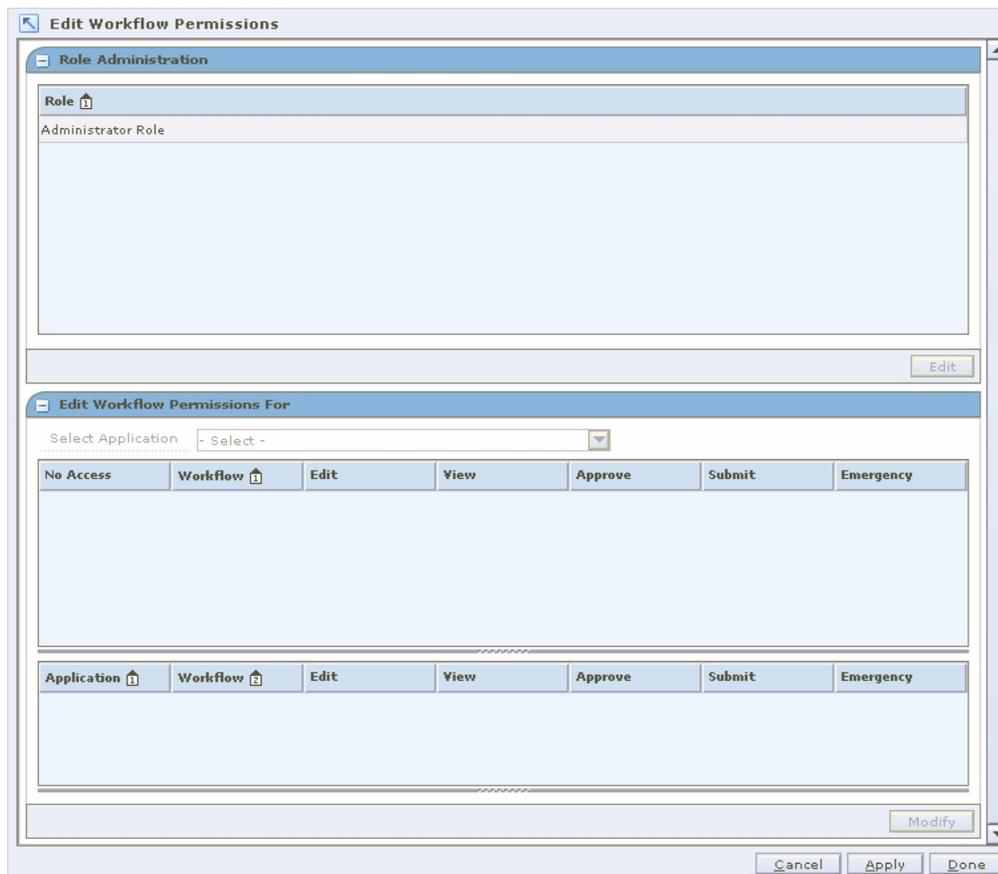


1. Click the LOV button next to the Select Users field.
2. Select a user to add from the right (selected users) column.
3. Click the left arrow button . The user is displayed in the right (available users) column.
4. Click **Select**. The users are removed from the role.
5. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes are saved and the workspace is closed.

### Add Workflow Permissions to a Role

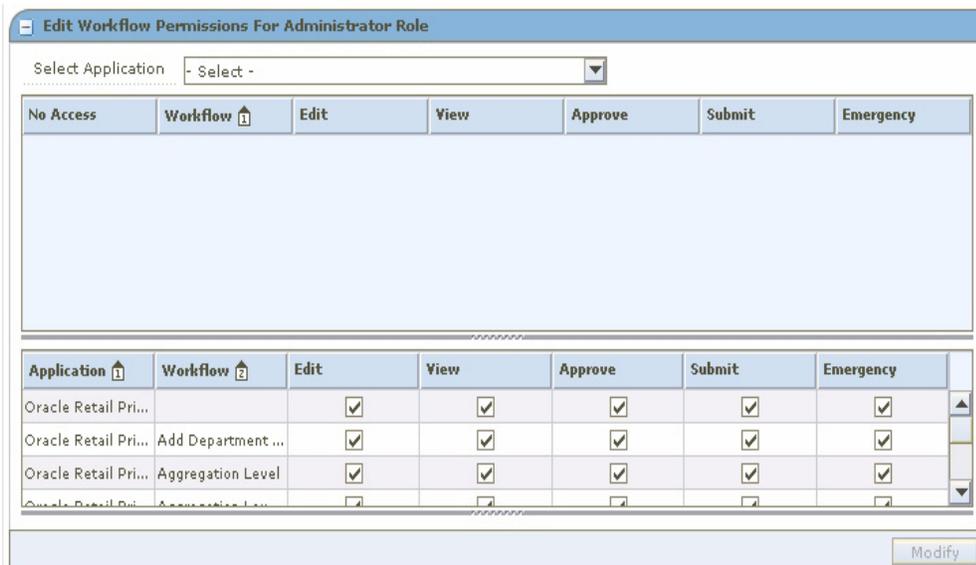
**Navigate:** From Tasks, select Role Administration > Edit Workflow Permissions. The Edit Workflow Permissions workspace is displayed.

**Figure 10–6 Edit Workflow Permissions Workspace**



1. In the Role area, select a role.
2. Click **Edit**. Information is displayed on the Edit Workflow Permissions pane. (You can also double-click the role you want to edit.)

**Figure 10–7 Edit Workflow Permissions For Pane**



3. Select the application with the workflows you want to add to the role from the Select Workflows drop-down list. Workflows for the application are displayed below.
4. Select the check box for each action you want to assign to the role.

---

**Note:** You must assign the Access action for the other assigned actions to be available to users in the role.

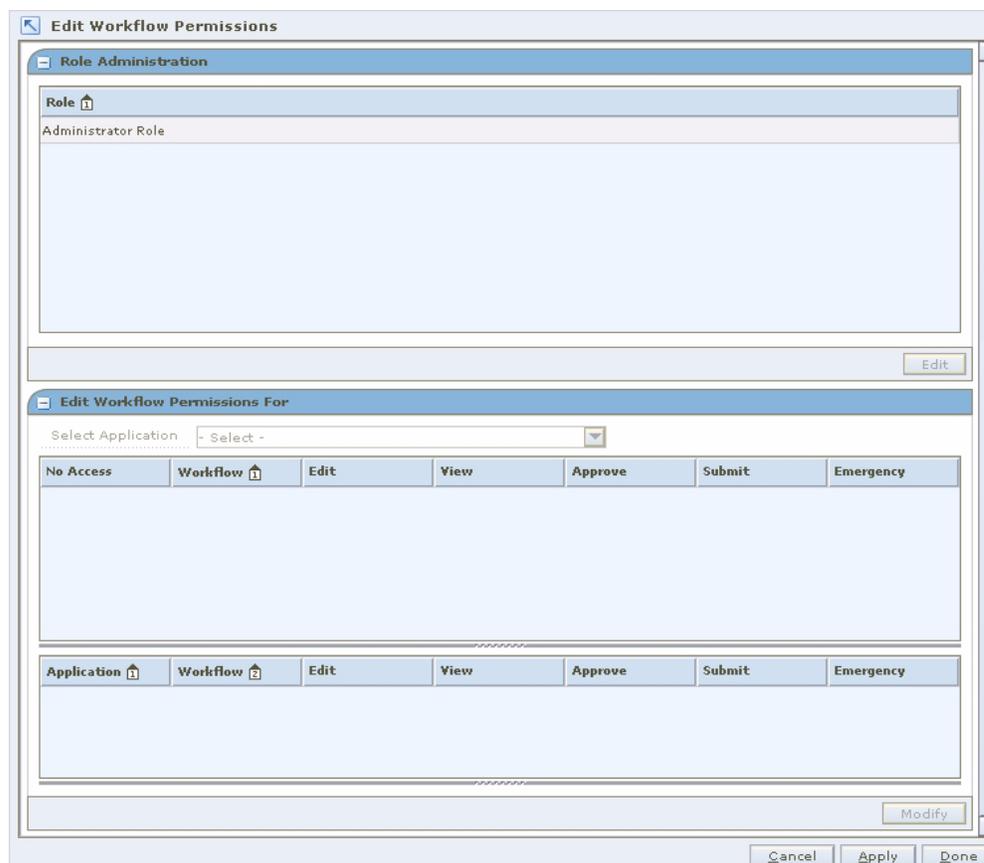
---

5. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes to the role are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes to the role are saved and the workspace is closed.

## Delete a Workflow and Associated Action from a Role

**Navigate:** From Tasks, select Role Administration > Edit Workflow Permissions. The Edit Workflow Permissions workspace is displayed.

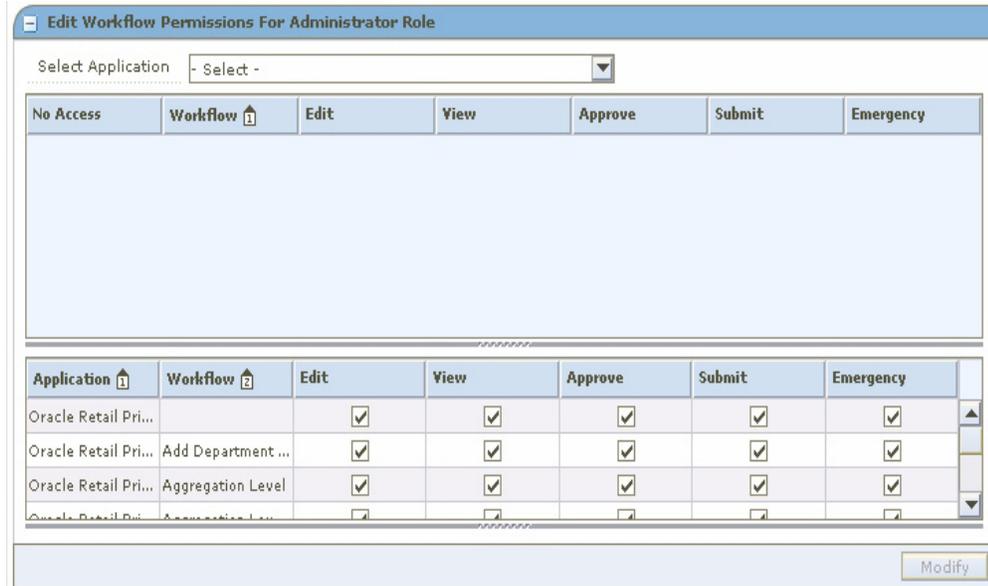
**Figure 10–8** Edit Workflow Permissions Workspace



1. In the Role area, select a role.
2. Click **Edit**. (You can also double-click on the role you want to edit.)

3. In the lower pane, select the application with the workflows you want to add to the role from the Select Workflows drop-down list. Workflows for the application are displayed in the Edit Workflow Permissions pane.

**Figure 10–9 Edit Workflow Permissions Pane**



4. Deselect the check boxes for each type of action you want to remove from the role.
5. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes to the role are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes to the role are saved and the workspace is closed.

### Add Data Permissions to a Role

**Navigate:** From Tasks, select Role Administration > Edit Data Permissions. The Edit Data Permissions workspace is displayed.

Figure 10–10 Edit Data Permissions Workspace

**Edit Data Permissions**

**Role Administration**

Role

Administrator Role

**Edit Data Permissions For**

Application	Data Element	Values	Start Date	End Date

Data Element	Values	Start Date	End Date

**Edit Data Permission Details**

Application:

Data Element:

\* Start Date:

End Date:

1. In the Role area, select a role.
2. Click **Edit**. Information is displayed in the Edit Data Permissions pane. (You can also double-click on the role you want to edit.)

**Figure 10–11 Edit Data Permissions For Pane**

Application	Data Element	Values	Start Date	End Date
	Location Hierarchy	1064 - ZG-for-dept...	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	2385 - ZG3_For_LNM...	01/21/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	1000 - Location Zon...	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	1 - All Locations	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	979 - test_4	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	984 - test_5	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	562 - ZG-AAA	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	978 - test_3	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	971 - test_1	01/11/2008	

Data Element	Values	Start Date	End Date

Remove    New

- Click **New**. The Edit Data Permission Details pane is enabled.

**Figure 10–12 Edit Data Permission Details Pane**

Application: - Select -

Data Element: - Select -

\* Start Date: 03/12/2008

End Date:

Modify

- Select an application from the Application drop-down list.
- Select a data element from the Data Element drop-down list.
- Enter a date in the Start Date field, or click the calendar button and select a date.
- Enter a date in the End Date field, or click the calendar button and select a date. (You can leave the End Date field blank.)
- Enter information in the rest of the enabled fields as required.
- Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes to the role are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes to the role are saved and the workspace is closed.

## Delete a Data Permission from a Role

**Navigate:** From the Task Pad, select Role Administration > Edit Data Permissions. The Edit Data Permissions workspace is displayed.

**Figure 10–13** Edit Data Permissions Workspace

The screenshot displays the 'Edit Data Permissions' workspace. It is divided into three main sections:

- Role Administration:** A list box containing 'Administrator Role' with an 'Edit' button to its right.
- Edit Data Permissions For:** A table with columns: Application, Data Element, Values, Start Date, and End Date. Below it is a similar table with columns: Data Element, Values, Start Date, and End Date. 'Remove' and 'New' buttons are located below the second table.
- Edit Data Permission Details:** A form with fields for Application (dropdown), Data Element (dropdown), \* Start Date, and End Date. Each field has a '+' icon to its right. A 'Modify' button is at the bottom right of this section.

At the bottom of the workspace are 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Done' buttons.

1. In the Role area, select a role.
2. Click **Edit**. Information is displayed on the Edit Data Permissions pane. (You can also double-click on the role you want to edit.)

**Figure 10–14 Edit Data Permissions Pane**

Application	Data Element	Values	Start Date	End Date
	Location Hierarchy	1064 - ZG-for-dept...	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	2385 - ZG3_For_LNM...	01/21/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	1000 - Location Zon...	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	1 - All Locations	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	979 - test_4	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	984 - test_5	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	562 - ZG-AAA	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	978 - test_3	01/11/2008	
	Location Hierarchy	971 - test_1	01/11/2008	

Data Element	Values	Start Date	End Date

Remove    New

3. Select the application from the Application drop-down list.
4. Select the data permission you want to remove from the Data Element drop-down list.
5. Click **Remove**. The data permission is removed from the list.
6. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes to the role are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes to the role are saved and the workspace is closed.

## User Administration

This section describes how to assign roles to users, add roles to a user, and remove roles from a user.

### Assign Roles to Users

Users are not created in RSM. Rather, RSM looks up users in a directory service that complies with Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). RSM retrieves the user information from the LDAP directory. You can then assign roles to the user.

---

**Note:** For additional information on RSM and LDAP-compliant directories, see the RSM Operations Guide.

---

**Navigate:** From Tasks, select User Administration > User Administration. The User Administration workspace is displayed.

**Figure 10–15 User Administration Workspace**

The screenshot displays the 'User Administration' workspace. It features two main sections: 'User Administration' and 'Edit User'.

**User Administration Section:**

User	Last Name	First Name
Alain.Frecon	Frecon	Alain

An 'Edit' button is located at the bottom right of this section.

**Edit User Section:**

Select Roles:  

Role	Start Date	End Date
------	------------	----------

Role Name:  \* Start Date:   End Date:

A 'Modify' button is located at the bottom right of this section.

At the bottom of the workspace, there are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Done'.

---

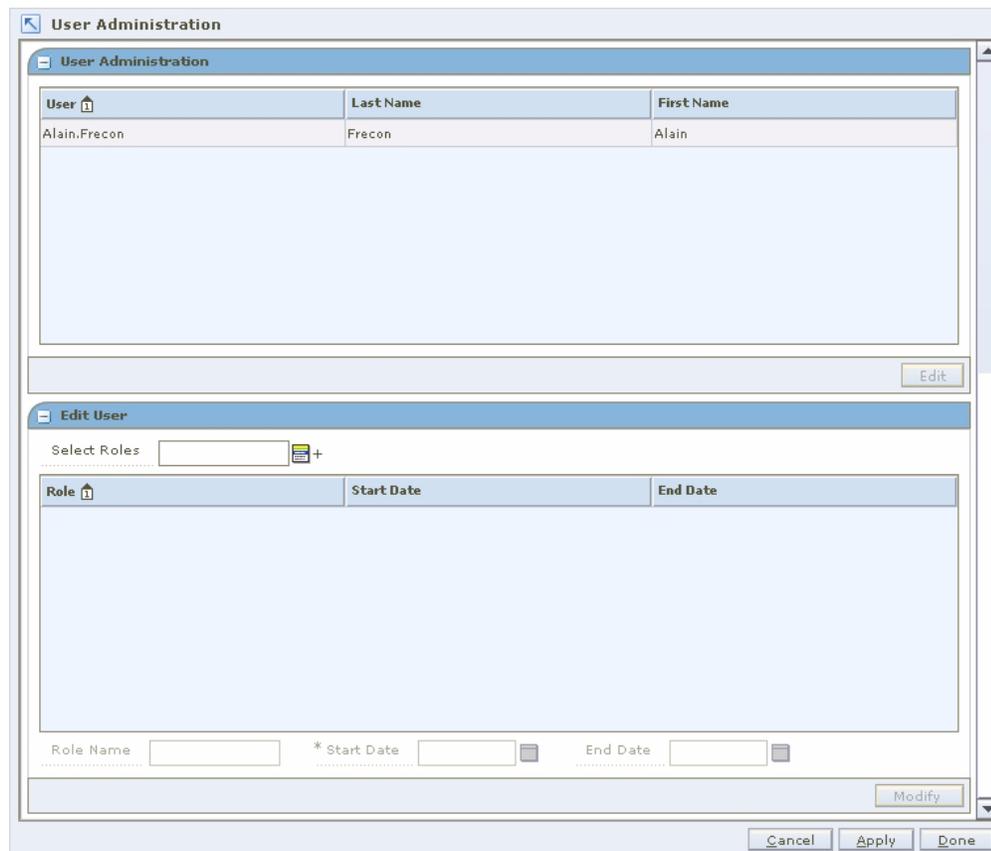
**Note:** Permissions are assigned to roles, then users are assigned to roles. Permissions are not assigned directly to users.

---

### Add Roles to a User

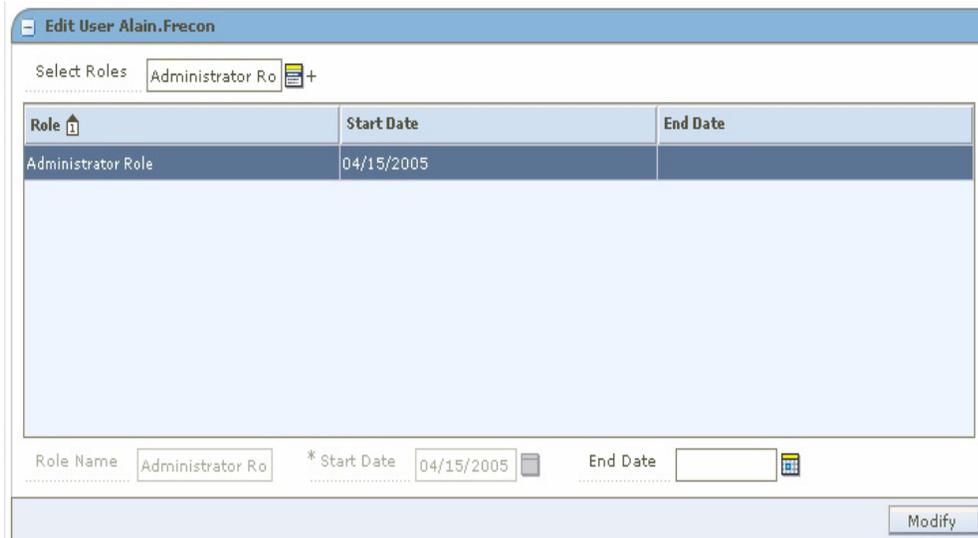
**Navigate:** From Tasks, select User Administration > User Administration. The User Administration workspace opens.

**Figure 10–16 User Administration Workspace**



1. In the User Administration pane, select a user.
2. Click **Edit**. The Edit User pane is enabled. (You can also double-click on the user you want to edit.)

**Figure 10–17 Edit User Pane**



3. Click the LOV button next to the Select Roles field.
  - a. Select a role from the left column.
  - b. Click the right arrow button. The role is listed in the right (selected roles) column.
  - c. Repeat steps a and b until all roles for the user are selected.
  - d. Click **Select**. The roles are assigned to the user.
4. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes to the user are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes to the user are saved and the workspace is closed.

## Remove Roles from a User

**Navigate:** From Tasks, select User Administration > User Administration. The User Administration workspace opens.

**Figure 10–18** User Administration Workspace

The screenshot shows the 'User Administration' workspace. It contains two main panels:

- User Administration Panel:** A table with columns 'User', 'Last Name', and 'First Name'. The first row contains 'Alain.Frecon', 'Frecon', and 'Alain'.
- Edit User Panel:** A form for editing a user. It includes a 'Select Roles' field with a LOV button (+). Below it is a table with columns 'Role', 'Start Date', and 'End Date'. At the bottom of the form are input fields for 'Role Name', '\* Start Date', and 'End Date', along with a 'Modify' button.

At the bottom of the workspace are three buttons: 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Done'.

---

**Note:** Permissions are assigned to roles, then users are assigned roles. Permissions are not assigned directly to users.

---

1. In the User Administration window, select a user.

2. Click **Edit**. The Edit User pane is enabled. (You can also double-click on the user you want to edit.)

**Figure 10–19 Edit User Pane**

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Edit User Alain.Frecon". At the top, there is a "Select Roles" field containing "Administrator Ro" and a plus sign icon. Below this is a table with three columns: "Role", "Start Date", and "End Date". The table contains one row with the following data:

Role	Start Date	End Date
Administrator Role	04/15/2005	

Below the table, there are input fields for "Role Name" (containing "Administrator Ro"), "\* Start Date" (containing "04/15/2005"), and "End Date" (empty). A "Modify" button is located at the bottom right of the pane.

3. Click the LOV button next to the Select Roles field.
4. Select a role to remove from the right (selected roles) column.
5. Click the left arrow button . The role is listed in the left (available roles) column.
6. Click **Select**. The user is removed from the role.
7. Apply your changes by doing one of the following:
  - Click **Apply**. The changes to the user are saved.
  - Click **Done**. The changes to the user are saved and the workspace is closed.